# Operating Instructions VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive FC 202 

315-1400 kW

## Contents

1 Introduction ..... 4
1.1 Purpose of the Manual ..... 4
1.2 Additional Resources ..... 4
1.3 Document and Software Version ..... 4
1.4 Approvals and Certifications ..... 4
1.5 Disposal ..... 5
1.6 Abbreviations and Conventions ..... 5
2 Safety ..... 7
2.1 Qualified Personnel ..... 7
2.2 Safety Regulations ..... 7
2.2.1 Discharge Time ..... 7
2.2.2 Safe Torque Off (STO) ..... 8
3 Mechanical Installation ..... 9
3.1 Pre-installation ..... 9
3.1.1 Planning the Installation Site ..... 9
3.1.1.1 Inspection on Receipt ..... 9
3.1.2 Receiving the Frequency Converter ..... 9
3.1.3 Transportation and Unpacking ..... 9
3.1.4 Lifting ..... 9
3.1.5 Mechanical Dimensions ..... 11
3.2 Mechanical Installation ..... 15
3.2.1 Preparation for Installation ..... 15
3.2.2 Tools Required ..... 15
3.2.3 General Considerations ..... 15
3.2.4 Terminal Locations, F8-F14 ..... 16
3.2.4.1 Inverter and Rectifier, Enclosure Sizes F8 and F9 ..... 16
3.2.4.2 Inverter, Enclosure Sizes F10 and F11 ..... 17
3.2.4.3 Inverter, Enclosure Sizes F12 and F13 ..... 18
3.2.4.4 Inverter, Enclosure Size F14 ..... 19
3.2.4.5 Rectifier, Enclosure Sizes F10, F11, F12 and F13 ..... 19
3.2.4.6 Rectifier, Enclosure Size F14 ..... 20
3.2.4.7 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Size F9 ..... 21
3.2.4.8 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F11/F13 ..... 22
3.2.5 Cooling and Airflow ..... 22
3.3 Frame size F Panel Options ..... 26
3.3.1 Panel Options ..... 26
4 How to Install ..... 28
4.1 Electrical Installation ..... 28
4.1.1 Power Connections ..... 28
4.1.2 Grounding ..... 35
4.1.3 Extra Protection (RCD) ..... 35
4.1.4 RFI Switch ..... 35
4.1.5 Torque ..... 35
4.1.6 Screened Cables ..... 36
4.1.7 Motor Cable ..... 36
4.1.8 Brake Cable for Frequency Converters with Factory-installed Brake Chopper Op- tion ..... 37
4.1.9 Shielding against Electrical Noise ..... 37
4.1.10 Mains Connection ..... 37
4.1.11 External Fan Supply ..... 38
4.1.12 Fuses ..... 38
4.1.13 Motor Insulation ..... 41
4.1.14 Motor Bearing Currents ..... 41
4.1.15 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch ..... 41
4.1.16 Control Cable Routing ..... 41
4.1.17 Access to Control Terminals ..... 42
4.1.18 Electrical Installation, Control Terminals ..... 42
4.2 Connection Examples ..... 43
4.2.1 Start/Stop ..... 43
4.2.2 Pulse Start/Stop ..... 43
4.3 Electrical Installation - additional ..... 45
4.3.1 Electrical Installation, Control Cables ..... 45
4.3.2 Switches S201, S202 and S801 ..... 47
4.4 Final Set-up and Test ..... 48
4.5 Additional Connections ..... 49
4.5.1 Mechanical Brake Control ..... 49
4.5.2 Parallel Connection of Motors ..... 49
4.5.3 Motor Thermal Protection ..... 50
5 How to operate the frequency converter ..... 51
5.1.1 How to operate graphical LCP (GLCP) ..... 51
5.1.2 How to Operate Numeric LCP (NLCP) ..... 54
5.1.3 Changing Data ..... 56
5.1.4 Changing a Text Value ..... 56
5.1.5 Changing a Group of Numeric Data Values ..... 56
5.1.6 Changing of Data Value, Step-by-Step ..... 57
5.1.7 Readout and Programming of Indexed Parameters ..... 57
5.1.8 Tips and Tricks ..... 57
5.1.9 Quick Transfer of Parameter Settings when Using GLCP ..... 57
5.1.10 Initialisation to Default Settings ..... 57
5.1.11 RS-485 Bus Connection ..... 58
5.1.12 How to Connect a PC to the Frequency Converter ..... 58
5.1.13 PC Software Tools ..... 59
6 How to programme the frequency converter ..... 60
6.1 How to programme ..... 60
6.1.7 Main Menu Mode ..... 64
6.1.8 Parameter Selection ..... 64
6.2 Commonly Used Parameters - Explanations ..... 65
6.2.2 0-** Operation/Display ..... 65
6.3 Parameter Options ..... 93
6.3.1 Default Settings ..... 93
7 General Specifications ..... 98
8 Troubleshooting ..... 109
Index ..... 121

## 1 Introduction

### 1.1 Purpose of the Manual

The frequency converter is designed to provide high shaft performance on electrical motors. Read these operating instructions carefully for proper use. Incorrect handling of the frequency converter may cause improper operation of the frequency converter or related equipment, shorten lifetime or cause other troubles.

These operating instructions provide information on:

- Start-up
- Installation
- Programming
- Troubleshooting
- Chapter 1 Introduction introduces the manual and informs about approvals, symbols, and abbreviations used in this manual.
- Chapter 2 Safety entails instructions on how to handle the frequency converter in a safe way.
- Chapter 3 Mechanical Installation guides through the mechanical installations.
- Chapter 4 How to Install guides through the electrical installations.
- Chapter 5 How to operate the frequency converter explains how to operate the frequency converter via the LCP.
- Chapter 6 How to programme the frequency converter explains how to programme the frequency converter via the LCP.
- Chapter 7 General Specifications contains technical data about the frequency converter.
- Chapter 8 Troubleshooting assists in solving problems that may occur when using the frequency converter.
$\mathrm{VLT}^{\circledR}$ is a registered trademark.


### 1.2 Additional Resources

- VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive FC 202 Operating Instructions provide the neccessary information for getting the frequency converter up and running.
- $\quad V L T^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive FC 202, 110-1400 kW Operating Instructions provide the neccessary information for getting the high power frequency converter up and running.
- $\quad V L T^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive FC 202 Design Guide entails all technical information about the frequency converter and customer design and applications.
- VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive FC 202 Programming Guide provides information on how to programme and includes complete parameter descriptions.
- VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive FC 202 Profibus
- VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive FC 202 DeviceNet
- Output Filters Design Guide
- VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive FC 202 Cascade Controller
- Application Note MN20A: Submersible Pump Application
- Application Note MN20: Master/Follower Operation Application
- Application Note MN2OF: Drive Closed Loop and Sleep Mode
- Installation Instruction for Mounting Brackets Enclosure type A5, B1, B2, C1 and C2 IP21, IP55 or IP66
- Instruction for Analog I/O Option MCB109
- Instruction for Panel through mount kit
- VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ Active Filter Operating Instruction

Danfoss technical literature is also available online at www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Documentations/Technical+Documentation.htm.

### 1.3 Document and Software Version

This manual is regularly reviewed and updated. All suggestions for improvement are welcome. Table 1.1 shows the document version and the corresponding software version.

| Edition | Remarks | Software version |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MG21Y2xx | Replaces MG21Y1xx | 2.2 x |

Table 1.1 Document and Software Version

### 1.4 Approvals and Certifications



The frequency converter complies with UL508C thermal memory retention requirements. For more information, refer to the section Motor Thermal Protection in the product specific design guide.

## NOTICE

## Imposed limitations on the output frequency (due to export control regulations):

From software version 6.72 onwards, the output frequency of the frequency converter is limited to 590 Hz . Software versions $6 x . x x$ also limit the maximum output frequency to 590 Hz , but these versions cannot be flashed, that is, neither downgraded nor upgraded.

### 1.5 Disposal



Do not dispose of equipment containing electrical components together with domestic waste.
Collect it separately in accordance with local and currently valid legislation.

### 1.6 Abbreviations and Conventions

| $60^{\circ}$ AVM | $60^{\circ}$ Asynchronous vector modulation |
| :--- | :--- |
| A | Ampere/AMP |
| AC | Alternating current |
| AD | Air discharge |
| AEO | Automatic energy optimisation |
| AI | Analog input |
| AMA | Automatic motor adaptation |
| AWG | American wire gauge |
| ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | Degrees Celsius |
| CD | Contant discharge |
| CM | Common mode |
| CT | Constant torque |
| DC | Direct current |
| DI | Digital input |
| DM | Differential mode |
| D-TYPE | Drive dependent |
| EMC | Electro magnetic compatibility |
| ETR | Electronic thermal relay |
| $\mathrm{f}_{\text {JOG }}$ | Motor frequency when jog function is <br> activated. |
| $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{M}}$ | Hotor frequency |
| $\mathrm{f}_{\text {MAX }}$ | The maximum output frequency the frequency <br> converter applies on its output. |
| $\mathrm{f}_{\text {MIN }}$ | The minimum motor frequency from <br> frequency converter |
| $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{N}}$ | Nominal motor frequency |
| FC | Framme is a registered trademark by |
| g | Hiperface ${ }^{\circledR}$ |


| hp | Horsepower |
| :---: | :---: |
| HTL | HTL encoder (10-30 V) pulses - High-voltage transistor logic |
| Hz | Hertz |
| linv | Rated inverter output current |
| ILIM | Current limit |
| $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{N}}$ | Nominal motor current |
| IVLt,max | The maximum output current |
| IvLt,N | The rated output current supplied by the frequency converter |
| kHz | Kilohertz |
| LCP | Local control panel |
| Isb | Least significant bit |
| m | Meter |
| mA | Milliampere |
| MCM | Mille circular mil |
| MCT | Motion control tool |
| mH | Millihenry inductance |
| min | Minute |
| ms | Millisecond |
| msb | Most significant bit |
| $\eta \mathrm{VLT}$ | Efficiency of the frequency converter defined as ratio between power output and power input. |
| nF | Nanofarad |
| NLCP | Numerical local control panel |
| Nm | Newton meters |
| $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{s}}$ | Synchronous motor speed |
| On-line/Off-line Parameters | Changes to on-line parameters are activated immediately after the data value is changed. |
| Pbr,cont. | Rated power of the brake resistor (average power during continuous braking). |
| PCB | Printed circuit board |
| PCD | Process data |
| PELV | Protective extra low voltage |
| Pm | Frequency converter nominal output power as HO. |
| $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{N}}$ | Nominal motor power |
| PM motor | Permanent magnet motor |
| Process PID | The PID regulator maintains the desired speed, pressure, temperature, etc. |
| Rbr,nom | The nominal resistor value that ensures a brake power on motor shaft of $150 / 160 \%$ for 1 minute |
| RCD | Residual current device |
| Regen | Regenerative terminals |
| $\mathrm{R}_{\text {min }}$ | Minimum permissible brake resistor value by frequency converter |
| RMS | Root mean square |
| RPM | Revolutions per minute |
| Rrec | Resistor value and resistance of the brake resistor |
| S | Second |


| SFAVM | Stator flux-oriented asynchronous vector <br> modulation |
| :--- | :--- |
| STW | Status word |
| SMPS | Switch mode power supply |
| THD | Total harmonic distortion |
| TLIM | Torque limit |
| TL | TL encoder (5 V) pulses - transistor transistor <br> logic |
| U $\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{N}$ | Nominal motor voltage |
| V | Volts |
| VT | Variable torque |
| VVC ${ }^{+}$ | Voltage vector control |

Table 1.2 Abbreviations

## Conventions

Numbered lists indicate procedures.
Bullet lists indicate other information and description of illustrations.
Italicised text indicates

- Cross reference
- Link
- Footnote
- Parameter name, parameter group name, parameter option

All dimensions are in mm [inch].

* indicates a default setting of a parameter.


## 2 Safety

The following symbols are used in this document:

## AWARNING

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which could result in death or serious injury.

## ACAUTION

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which could result in minor or moderate injury. It can also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

## NOTICE

Indicates important information, including situations that can result in damage to equipment or property.

### 2.1 Qualified Personnel

Correct and reliable transport, storage, installation, operation, and maintenance are required for the troublefree and safe operation of the frequency converter. Only qualified personnel are allowed to install or operate this equipment.

Qualified personnel are defined as trained staff, who are authorised to install, commission, and maintain equipment, systems, and circuits in accordance with pertinent laws and regulations. Additionally, the personnel must be familiar with the instructions and safety measures described in these operating instructions.

### 2.2 Safety Regulations

## AWARNING

## HIGH VOLTAGE

Frequency converters contain high voltage when connected to AC mains input, DC power supply, or load sharing. Failure to perform installation, start-up, and maintenance by qualified personnel can result in death or serious injury.

- Installation, start-up, and maintenance must be performed by qualified personnel only.


## AWARNING

UNINTENDED START
When the frequency converter is connected to AC mains, DC power supply, or load sharing, the motor may start at any time. Unintended start during programming, service, or repair work can result in death, serious injury, or property damage. The motor can start by means of an external switch, a serial bus command, an input reference signal from the LCP, or after a cleared fault condition.
To prevent unintended motor start:

- Disconnect the frequency converter from the mains.
- Press [Off/Reset] on the LCP before programming parameters.
- The frequency converter, motor, and any driven equipment must be fully wired and assembled when the frequency converter is connected to AC mains, DC power supply, or load sharing.


### 2.2.1 Discharge Time

| Voltage [V] | Minimum waiting time (minutes) |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
|  | 30 | 40 |
| $380-500 \mathrm{~V}$ |  | $315-1000 \mathrm{~kW}$ |
| $525-600 \mathrm{~V}$ | $400-1400 \mathrm{~kW}$ |  |

Table 2.1 Discharge Time

## AWARNING

LEAKAGE CURRENT HAZARD
Leakage currents exceed 3.5 mA . Failure to ground the frequency converter properly can result in death or serious injury.

- Ensure the correct grounding of the equipment by a certified electrical installer.


## AWARNING

## EQUIPMENT HAZARD

Contact with rotating shafts and electrical equipment can result in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that only trained and qualified personnel perform installation, start up, and maintenance.
- Ensure that electrical work conforms to national and local electrical codes.
- Follow the procedures in these operating instructions.


## AWARNING

## UNINTENDED MOTOR ROTATION

WINDMILLING
Unintended rotation of permanent magnet motors can result in serious injury or equipment damage.

- Ensure that permanent magnet motors are blocked to prevent unintended rotation.


## ACAUTION

INTERNAL FAILURE HAZARD
An internal failure in the frequency converter can result in serious injury, when the frequency converter is not properly closed.

- Ensure that all safety covers are in place and securely fastened before applying power.


### 2.2.2 Safe Torque Off (STO)

STO is an option. To run STO, additional wiring for the frequency converter is required. Refer to $V L T^{\circledR}$ Frequency Converters Safe Torque Off Operating Instructions for further information.

## 3 Mechanical Installation

### 3.1 Pre-installation

### 3.1.1 Planning the Installation Site

## NOTICE

Plan the installation of the frequency converter before commencing the installation. Neglecting this may result in extra work during and after installation.

Select the best possible operation site by considering the following (see details on the following pages, and the respective Design Guides):

- Ambient operating temperature
- Installation method
- How to cool the unit
- Position of the frequency converter
- Cable routing
- Ensure that the power source supplies the correct voltage and necessary current.
- Ensure that the motor current rating is within the maximum current from the frequency converter.
- If the frequency converter is without built-in fuses, ensure that the external fuses are rated correctly.


### 3.1.1.1 Inspection on Receipt

After receiving the delivery, immediately check whether the scope of delivery matches the shipping documents. Danfoss does not honour claims for faults registered at a later time. Register a complaint immediately:

- With the carrier in case of visible transport damage.
- With the responsible Danfoss representative in case of visible defects or incomplete delivery.


### 3.1.2 Receiving the Frequency Converter

When receiving the frequency converter, make sure that the packaging is intact, and be aware of any damage that might have occurred to the unit during transport. In case damage has occurred, immediately contact the shipping company to claim the damage.

### 3.1.3 Transportation and Unpacking

Locate the frequency converter as close as possible to the final installation site before unpacking.
Remove the box and handle the frequency converter on the pallet, as long as possible.

### 3.1.4 Lifting

Always lift the frequency converter via the dedicated lifting eyes.


Illustration 3.1 Recommended Lifting Method, Enclosure Size F8.


Illustration 3.2 Recommended Lifting Method, Enclosure Size F9/F10.


Illustration 3.3 Recommended Lifting Method, Enclosure Size F11/F12/F13/F14.

## NOTICE

The plinth is provided in the same packaging as the frequency converter, but is not attached during shipment. The plinth is required to allow airflow cooling to the frequency converter. Position the frequency converter on top of the plinth in the final installation location. The angle from the top of the frequency converter to the lifting cable should be $>60^{\circ}$. In addition to Illustration 3.1 to Illustration 3.3, a spreader bar can be used to lift the frequency converter.

### 3.1.5 Mechanical Dimensions



Table 3.2



Table 3.4 Mechanical Dimensions, Enclosure Sizes E and F

## NOTICE

The F frames are available in 6 different sizes, F8, F9, F10, F11, F12 and F13 The F8, F10 and F12 consist of an inverter cabinet on the right and rectifier cabinet on the left. The F9, F11 and F13 have an additional options cabinet left of the rectifier cabinet. The F9 is an F8 with an additional options cabinet. The F11 is an F10 with an additional options cabinet. The F13 is an F12 with an additional options cabinet.

### 3.2 Mechanical Installation

### 3.2.1 Preparation for Installation

Make the following preparations to ensure reliable and effective installation of the frequency converter:

- Provide a suitable mounting arrangement. The mounting arrangement depends on the design, weight, and torque of the frequency converter.
- Examine the mechanical drawings to ensure that the space requirements are met.
- Ensure that all wiring is done in accordance with national regulations.


### 3.2.2 Tools Required

- Drill with 10 or 12 mm bit.
- Tape measure.
- Wrench with relevant metric sockets (7-17 mm).
- Extensions to wrench.
- $\quad$ Sheet metal punch for conduits or cable glands in IP21/Nema 1 and IP54 units
- Lifting bar to lift the unit (rod or tube max. $\varnothing 25$ mm ( 1 inch), able to lift minimum 400 kg ( 880 $\mathrm{lbs})$ ).
- Crane or other lifting aid to place the frequency converter in position.


### 3.2.3 General Considerations

## Space

Ensure sufficient space above and below the frequency converter to allow airflow and cable access. In addition, allow for enough space in front of the unit to open the panel door, see Illustration 3.4 to Illustration 3.10.


Illustration 3.4 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F8


Illustration 3.5 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F9


Illustration 3.6 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F10


Illustration 3.7 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F11


Illustration 3.8 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F12


Illustration 3.9 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F13


Illustration 3.10 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F14

## Wire access

Ensure that proper wire access is present including the necessary bending allowance.

## NOTICE

All cable lugs/shoes must mount within the width of the terminal bus bar.

### 3.2.4 Terminal Locations, F8-F14

The F enclosures are available in 7 different sizes, F8, F9, F10, F11, F12, F13, and F14. The F8, F10, F12, and F14 consist of an inverter cabinet on the right and rectifier cabinet on the left. The F9, F11 and F13 have an additional options cabinet left of the rectifier cabinet. The F9 is an F8 with an additional options cabinet. The F11 is an F10 with an additional options cabinet. The F13 is an F12 with an additional options cabinet.

### 3.2.4.1 Inverter and Rectifier, Enclosure Sizes F8 and F9



Illustration 3.11 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

1) Ground bar

### 3.2.4.2 Inverter, Enclosure Sizes F10 and F11



Illustration 3.12 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

1) Ground bar
2) Motor terminals
3) Brake terminals
3.2.4.3 Inverter, Enclosure Sizes F12 and F13


Illustration 3.13 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

1) Ground bar

### 3.2.4.4 Inverter, Enclosure Size F14



Illustration 3.14 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

### 3.2.4.5 Rectifier, Enclosure Sizes F10, F11, F12 and F13



Illustration 3.15 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

1) Loadshare Terminal (-)
2) Ground bar
3) Loadshare Terminal (+)

### 3.2.4.6 Rectifier, Enclosure Size F14



Illustration 3.16 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

### 3.2.4.7 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Size F9




Illustration 3.17 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views

### 3.2.4.8 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F11/F13



Illustration 3.18 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views

### 3.2.5 Cooling and Airflow

## Cooling

Cooling can be achieved in different ways:

- By using the cooling ducts at the top and bottom of the unit.
- By taking air in and out the back of the unit.
- By combining the cooling methods.


## Duct cooling

A dedicated option has been developed to optimise the installation of frequency converters in Rittal TS8 enclosures utilising the frequency converter fan for forced air cooling of the backchannel. The air out of the top of the enclosure could be ducted outside a facility so the heat losses from the backchannel are not dissipated within the control room. This ultimately reduces the air-conditioning requirements of the facility.

## Back cooling

The backchannel air can also be ventilated in and out of the back of a Rittal TS8 enclosure. The backchannel takes cool air from outside the facility and returns warm air to outside the facility, thus reducing air-conditioning requirements.

## Airflow

Ensure sufficient airflow over the heat sink. The flow rate is shown in Table 3.5.

| Enclosure <br> protection | Door fan(s)/Top fan <br> airflow | Heat sink fan(s) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| IP21/NEMA 1 | $700 \mathrm{~m}^{3} / \mathrm{h}(412 \mathrm{cfm})^{*}$ | $985 \mathrm{~m}^{3} / \mathrm{h}(580 \mathrm{cfm})^{*}$ |
| IP54/NEMA 12 | $525 \mathrm{~m}^{3} / \mathrm{h}(309 \mathrm{cfm})^{*}$ | $985 \mathrm{~m}^{3} / \mathrm{h}(580 \mathrm{cfm})^{*}$ |

Table 3.5 Heat Sink Air Flow

* Airflow per fan. Enclosure sizes F contain multiple fans.


## NOTICE

The fan runs for the following reasons:

- AMA
- DC Hold
- Pre-Mag
- DC Brake
- $60 \%$ of nominal current is exceeded.
- Specific heat sink temperature exceeded (power size dependent).

The fan runs for minimum 10 minutes.

## External ducts

If additional duct work is added externally to the Rittal cabinet, calculate the pressure drop in the ducting. To derate the frequency converter according to the pressure drop, refer to Illustration 3.19.


Illustration 3.19 Enclosure Size F, Derating vs. Pressure Change (Pa)
Drive air flow: $985 \mathrm{~m}^{3} / \mathrm{h}$ ( 580 cfm )

### 3.2.6 Gland/Conduit Entry - IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12)

Cables are connected through the gland plate from the bottom. Remove the plate and plan where to place the entry for the glands or conduits. Prepare holes in the marked area on the drawings in Table 3.6 and Table 3.7.

## NOTICE

Fit the gland plate to the frequency converter to ensure the specified protection degree, as well as ensuring proper cooling of the unit. If the gland plate is not mounted, the frequency converter may trip on Alarm 69, Pwr. Card Temp

Illustration 3.20 Example of Proper Installation of the Gland Plate.


Table 3.6 F8-F10: Cable Entries Viewed from the Bottom of the Frequency Converter


### 3.3 Frame size F Panel Options

### 3.3.1 Panel Options

## Space heaters and thermostat

Space heaters are mounted on the cabinet interior of enclosure size F10-F14 frequency converters. They are controlled via an automatic thermostat, and help control humidity inside the enclosure, thereby extending the lifetime of frequency converter components in damp environments. The thermostat default settings turn on the heaters at $10{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(50^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ and turn them off at $15.6^{\circ} \mathrm{C}(60$ ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$ ).

## Cabinet light with power outlet

A light mounted on the cabinet interior of enclosure size F10-F14 frequency converters increases visibility during servicing and maintenance. The housing light includes a power outlet for temporarily powering tools or other devices, available in 2 voltages:

- $\quad 230 \mathrm{~V}, 50 \mathrm{~Hz}, 2.5 \mathrm{~A}, \mathrm{CE} / E N E C$
- $\quad 120 \mathrm{~V}, 60 \mathrm{~Hz}, 5 \mathrm{~A}, \mathrm{UL} / \mathrm{cUL}$


## Transformer tap set-up

If the cabinet light and outlet, and/or the space heaters and thermostat are installed, transformer T1 requires the taps to be set to the proper input voltage. A $380-480 / 500 \mathrm{~V}$ unit is initially set to the 525 V tap and a $525-690 \mathrm{~V}$ unit is set to the 690 V tap. This ensures that no overvoltage of secondary equipment occurs if the tap is not changed before power is applied. See Table 3.8 to set the proper tap at terminal T1, located in the rectifier cabinet. For location in the frequency converter, see the illustration of the rectifier in Illustration 4.1.

| Input voltage range [V] | Tap to select [V] |
| :--- | :--- |
| $380-440$ | 400 |
| $441-490$ | 460 |
| $491-550$ | 525 |
| $551-625$ | 575 |
| $626-660$ | 660 |
| $661-690$ | 690 |

Table 3.8 Transformer Tap Setting

## NAMUR terminals

NAMUR is an international association of automation technology users in the process industries, primarily chemical and pharmaceutical industries in Germany. Selection of this option provides terminals organised and labeled to the specifications of the NAMUR standard for frequency converter input and output terminals. This requires an MCB 112 PTC Thermistor Card and an MCB 113 Extended Relay Card.

## RCD (residual current device)

Uses the core balance method to monitor ground fault currents in grounded and high-resistance grounded systems (TN and TT systems in IEC terminology). There is a pre-warning ( $50 \%$ of main alarm setpoint) and a main
alarm setpoint. Associated with each setpoint is an SPDT alarm relay for external use. Requires an external windowtype current transformer (not supplied).

- Integrated into the frequency converter's safestop circuit.
- IEC 60755 Type B device monitors AC, pulsed DC, and pure DC ground fault currents.
- LED bar graph indicator of the ground fault current level from 10-100\% of the setpoint.
- Fault memory
- TEST/RESET button


## IRM (insulation resistance monitor)

Monitors the insulation resistance in ungrounded systems (IT systems in IEC terminology) between the system phase conductors and ground. There is an ohmic pre-warning and a main alarm setpoint for the insulation level. Associated with each setpoint is an SPDT alarm relay for external use.

## NOTICE

Only one insulation resistance monitor can be connected to each ungrounded (IT) system.

- Integrated into the frequency converter's safestop circuit.
- LCD display of the ohmic value of the insulation resistance.
- Fault Memory
- [Info], [Test], and [Reset] keys


## Manual motor starters

Provide 3-phase power for electric blowers often required for larger motors. Power for the starters is provided from the load side of any supplied contactor, circuit breaker, or disconnect switch. Power is fused before each motor starter and is off when the incoming power to the frequency converter is off. Up to 2 starters are allowed (only 1 if a 30 A , fuse-protected circuit is ordered). The manual motor starter is integrated into the frequency converter's STO and includes the following features:

- Operation switch (on/off)
- Short-circuit and overload protection with test function
- Manual reset function


## 30 Amp, fuse-protected terminals

- 3-phase power matching incoming mains voltage for powering auxiliary customer equipment.
- Not available if 2 manual motor starters are selected.
- Terminals are off when the incoming power to
- Power for the fused protected terminals is provided from the load side of any supplied circuit breaker or disconnect switch.

24 V DC power supply

- $5 \mathrm{~A}, 120 \mathrm{~W}, 24 \mathrm{~V}$ DC
- Protected against output overcurrent, overload, short circuits, and overtemperature.
- For powering 3rd party accessory devices such as sensors, PLC I/O, contactors, temperature probes, indicator lights, and/or other electronic hardware.
- Diagnostics include a dry DC-ok contact, a green DC-ok LED, and a red overload LED.


## External temperature monitoring

Designed for monitoring temperatures of external system components, such as the motor windings and/or bearings. Includes 8 universal input modules plus 2 dedicated thermistor input modules. All 10 modules are integrated into the frequency converter's STO circuit and can be monitored via a fieldbus network (requires a separate module/bus coupler).

## Universal inputs (8) - signal types

- RTD inputs (including Pt100), 3-wire or 4 -wire
- Thermocoupler
- Analog current or analog voltage


## Additional features:

- 1 universal output, configurable for analog voltage or analog current.
- 2 output relays (N.O.)
- Dual-line LC display and LED diagnostics
- Sensor lead wire break, short-circuit, and incorrect polarity detection
- Interface set-up software


## Dedicated thermistor inputs (2) - features

- Each module is capable of monitoring up to 6 thermistors in series.
- Fault diagnostics for wire breakage or shortcircuits of sensor leads.
- ATEX/UL/CSA certification
- A 3rd thermistor input can be provided by the PTC Thermistor Option Card MCB 112, if necessary.


## 4 How to Install

### 4.1 Electrical Installation

### 4.1.1 Power Connections

## Cabling and Fusing

NOTICE

## Cables General

All cabling must comply with national and local regulations on cable cross-sections and ambient temperature. UL applications require $75^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ copper conductors. $75{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and $90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ copper conductors are thermally acceptable for the frequency converter to use in non UL applications.

The power cable connections are located as in Illustration 4.1. Dimensioning of the cable cross-section must be done in accordance with the current ratings and local legislation. See chapter 7.1 General Specifications for details.

For protection of the frequency converter, use the recommended fuses, or ensure that the unit has built-in fuses. Recommended fuses are detailed in in chapter 4.1.12 Fuses. Always ensure that fusing conforms to local regulations.

The mains connection is fitted to the mains switch if this is included.


Illustration 4.1 Power Cable Connections

## NOTICE

If an unscreened/unarmoured cable is used, some EMC requirements are not complied with. Use a screened/armoured motor cable to comply with EMC emission specifications. For more information, see EMC Specifications in the product relevant design guide.

See chapter 7.1 General Specifications for the correct dimensioning of the motor cable cross-section and length.


Illustration 4.2 A) Modified 6-Pulse Connection ${ }^{11,}{ }^{2}$ ), 3)
B) 12-Pulse Connection ${ }^{2)}$, 4)

## Notes

1) 6-pulse connection eliminates the harmonics reduction benefits of the 12-pulse rectifier.
2) Suitable for IT and TN mains connection.
3) In the unlikely event that 1 of the 6 -pulse modular rectifiers becomes inoperable, it is possible to operate the frequency converter at reduced load with a single 6 -pulse rectifier. Contact Danfoss for reconnection details.
4) No paralleling of mains cabling is shown here.

## Screening of cables

Avoid installation with twisted screen ends (pigtails). They spoil the screening effect at higher frequencies. If it is necessary to break the screen to install a motor isolator or motor contactor, the screen must be continued at the lowest possible HF impedance.

Connect the motor cable screen to both the decoupling plate of the frequency converter and to the metal housing of the motor.

Make the screen connections with the largest possible surface area (cable clamp). This is done by using the supplied installation devices within the frequency converter.

## Cable length and cross-section

The frequency converter has been EMC tested with a given cable length. Keep the motor cable as short as possible to reduce the noise level and leakage currents.

## Switching frequency

When frequency converters are used with sine-wave filters to reduce the acoustic noise from a motor, set the switching frequency according to the instruction in 14-01 Switching Frequency.

| Term. no. |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 96 | 97 | 98 | 99 |  |
| U | V | W | PE ${ }^{1)}$ | Motor voltage 0-100\% of mains voltage. <br> 3 wires out of motor |
| U1 | V1 | W1 |  | Delta-connected |
| W2 | U2 | V2 |  | 6 wires out of motor |
| U1 | V1 | W1 | PE ${ }^{1)}$ | Star-connected U2, V2, W2 U2, V2 and W2 to be interconnected separately. |

Table 4.1 Terminal Connections

1) Protective Earth Connection

## NOTICE

In motors without phase insulation paper or other insulation reinforcement suitable for operation with voltage supply (such as a frequency converter), fit a sinewave filter on the output of the frequency converter.


Illustration 4.3 Star and Delta Connections


| 1 | 12-pulse rectifier module |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Ground/earth PE terminals |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | Mains/fuses |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | R1 | S1 | T1 |  |  |  |
|  | L1-1 | L2-1 | L3-1 |  |  |  |
|  | 91-1 | 92-1 | 93-1 |  |  |  |
| 4 | Mains/fuses |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | R2 | S2 | T2 |  |  |  |
|  | L2-1 | L2-2 | L3-2 |  |  |  |
|  | 91-2 | 92-2 | 93-2 |  |  |  |
| 5 | Motor connection |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | U | V | W |  |  |  |
|  | T1 | T2 | T3 |  |  |  |
|  | 96 | 97 | 98 |  |  |  |
| 6 | Brake terminals |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | -R $\quad+\mathrm{R}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 8182 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7 | Inverter module |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8 | SCR enable/disable |  |  |  |  |  |
| 9 | Relay 1 |  |  | Relay 2 |  |  |
|  | 01 | 02 | 03 | 04 | 05 | 06 |
| 10 | Auxillary fan |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 104 | 106 |  |  |  |  |


| 1 | 12-pulse rectifier module |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | AUX fan |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 100 | 101 | 102 | 103 |  |  |
|  | L1 | L2 | L1 | L2 |  |  |
| 3 | Mains fuses F10/F12 (6 pieces) |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4 | Mains |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | R1 | S1 | T1 | R2 | S2 | T2 |
|  | L1-1 | L2-1 | L3-1 | L1-2 | L2-2 | L3-2 |
| 5 | DC bus connections for common DC bus |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | DC+ DC- |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6 | DC bus connections for common DC bus |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | DC+ DC- |  |  |  |  |  |

[^0]Illustration 4.4 Rectifier and Inverter Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes
F8 and F9




Illustration 4.7 Inverter Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F10 and F11

Illustration 4.6 Rectifier Cabinet, Enclosure Size F14


| 1 | External temperature monitoring |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | AUX relay |  |  |  |
|  | 01 | 02 | 03 |  |
|  | 04 | 05 | 06 |  |
| 3 | NAMUR |  |  |  |
| 4 | AUX fan |  |  |  |
|  | 100 | 101 | 102 | 103 |
|  | L1 | L2 | L1 | L2 |
| 5 | Brake |  |  |  |
|  | -R | +R |  |  |
|  | 81 | 82 |  |  |
| 6 | Motor |  |  |  |
|  | U | V | W |  |
|  | 96 | 97 | 98 |  |
|  | T1 | T2 | T3 |  |
| 7 | NAMUR fuse. See Table 4.16 for part numbers. |  |  |  |
| 8 | Fan fuses. See Table 4.13 for part numbers. |  |  |  |
| 9 | SMPS fuses. See Table 4.12 for part numbers. |  |  |  |


| 4 | AUX fan |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 100 | 101 | 102 | 103 |  |  |  |
|  | L 1 | L 2 | L 1 | L 2 |  |  |  |
| 5 | Brake |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | -R | +R |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 81 | 82 |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Motor | V | W |  |  |  |  |
|  | U | 97 | 98 |  |  |  |  |
|  | 96 | T 2 | T 3 |  |  |  |  |

Illustration 4.9 Inverter Cabinet, Enclosure Size F14

Illustration 4.8 Inverter Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F12 and F13




Illustration 4.10 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Size F9



Illustration 4.11 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F11 and F13

### 4.1.2 Grounding

To obtain electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), consider the following basic issues when installing a frequency converter.

- Safety grounding: The frequency converter has a high leakage current ( $>3.5 \mathrm{~mA}$ ) and must be grounded appropriately for safety reasons. Apply local safety regulations.
- High-frequency grounding: Keep the ground wire connections as short as possible.

Connect the different ground systems at the lowest possible conductor impedance. This is obtained by keeping the conductor as short as possible and by using the greatest possible surface area.
The metal cabinets of the different devices are mounted on the cabinet rear plate using the lowest possible Highfrequency impedance. This avoids having different Highfrequency voltages for the individual devices and avoids the risk of radio interference currents running in any connection cables used between the devices. The radio interference has been reduced.
To obtain a low High-frequency impedance, use the fastening bolts of the devices as High-frequency connection to the rear plate. Remove any insulating paint or similar from the fastening points.

### 4.1.3 Extra Protection (RCD)

If local safety regulations are complied with, ELCB relays, multiple protective earthing or grounding can be used as extra protection.

A ground fault may cause a DC component to develop in the fault current.

If ELCB relays are used, observe local regulations. Relays must be suitable for the protection of 3 -phase equipment with a bridge rectifier and for a brief discharge on powerup.

See also Special Conditions in the product relevant design guide.

### 4.1.4 RFI Switch

## Mains supply isolated from ground

Turn off (OFF) ${ }^{11}$ the RFI switch via 14-50 RFI Filter on the frequency converter and 14-50 RFI Filter on the filter if:

- The frequency converter is supplied from an isolated mains source (IT mains, floating delta and grounded delta).
- The frequency converter is supplied from TT/TN-S mains with grounded leg.

For further reference, see IEC 364-3.
Set 14-50 RFI Filter to [ON] if:

- Optimum EMC performance is needed.
- Parallel motors are connected.
- The motor cable length is above 25 m .
${ }^{1)}$ Not available for 525-600/690 V frequency converters.

In OFF, the internal RFI capacities (filter capacitors) between the chassis and the intermediate circuit are cut off to avoid damage to the intermediate circuit and to reduce the ground capacity currents (according to IEC 61800-3).
Also refer to the application note VLT on IT mains. It is important to use isolation monitors which are compatible with power electronics (IEC 61557-8).

### 4.1.5 Torque

When tightening all electrical connections, it is important to tighten with the correct torque. Too low or too high torque results in a poor electrical connection. Use a torque wrench to ensure correct torque.


Illustration 4.12 Tightening Torques.

| Enclosure size | Terminal | Torque | Bolt size |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| F8-F14 | Mains | $19-40 \mathrm{Nm}$ | $(168-354$ in- |
|  | M10 |  |  |
|  | Motor | lbs $)$ |  |
|  |  | $8.5-20.5 \mathrm{Nm}$ <br> $(75-181 ~ \mathrm{in}-\mathrm{lbs})$ | M8 |

Table 4.2 Tightening Torques

### 4.1.6 Screened Cables

## $\triangle$ WARNING

Danfoss recommends using screened cables between the LCL filter and the frequency converter. Unshielded cables can be used between transformer and LCL filter input side.

It is important that screened and armoured cables are connected in a proper way to ensure high EMC immunity and low emissions.

The connection can be made using either cable glands or clamps.

- EMC cable glands: Available cable glands can be used to ensure an optimum EMC connection.
- EMC cable clamp: Clamps allowing easy connection are supplied with the frequency converter.


### 4.1.7 Motor Cable

Connect the motor to terminals U/T1/96, V/T2/97, W/T3/98. Ground to terminal 99. All types of 3-phase asynchronous standard motors can be used with a frequency converter. The factory setting is for clockwise rotation with the frequency converter output connected as follows:

| Terminal Number | Function |
| :--- | :--- |
| $96,97,98$ | Mains U/T1, V/T2, W/T3 |
| 99 | Ground |

Table 4.3 Motor Connection Terminals

- Terminal U/T1/96 connected to U-phase.
- Terminal V/T2/97 connected to V-phase.
- Terminal W/T3/98 connected to W-phase.


Illustration 4.13 Wiring for Clockwise and Counterclockwise Motor Rotation

The direction of rotation can be changed by switching 2 phases in the motor cable or by changing the setting of 4-10 Motor Speed Direction.

A motor rotation check can be performed using 1-28 Motor Rotation Check and following the steps shown on the display.

## Requirements

F8/F9 requirements: The cables must be of equal length within $10 \%$ between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

F10/F11 requirements: Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 2 , resulting in $2,4,6$, or 8 ( 1 cable is not allowed) to obtain equal amount of wires attached to both inverter module terminals. The cables must be equal length within $10 \%$ between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

F12/F13 requirements: Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 3 , resulting in $3,6,9$, or $12(1,2$, or 3 cables are not allowed) to obtain an equal amount of wires attached to each inverter module terminal. The wires must be of equal length within $10 \%$ between the inverter
module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

F14 requirements: Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 4 , resulting in $4,8,12$, or $16(1,2$, or 3 cables are not allowed) to obtain an equal amount of wires attached to each inverter module terminal. The wires must be of equal length within $10 \%$ between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

Output junction box requirements: The length, minimum 2.5 m , and quantity of cables must be equal from each inverter module to the common terminal in the junction box.

## NOTICE

If a retrofit application requires an unequal amount of wires per phase, consult Danfoss for requirements and documentation, or use the top/bottom entry side cabinet option.

### 4.1.8 Brake Cable for Frequency Converters with Factory-installed Brake Chopper Option

(Only standard with letter B in position 18 of product type code).

Use a screened connection cable to the brake resistor. The maximum length from the frequency converter to the DC bar is limited to $25 \mathrm{~m}(82 \mathrm{ft}$ ).

| Terminal number | Function |
| :--- | :--- |
| 81,82 | Brake resistor terminals |

Table 4.4 Brake Resistor Terminals

The connection cable to the brake resistor must be screened. Connect the screen to the conductive back plate on the frequency converter and to the metal cabinet of the brake resistor with cable clamps.
Size the brake cable cross-section to match the brake torque. See also the Instructions Brake Resistor and Brake Resistors for Horizontal Applications for further information regarding safe installation.

## NOTICE

Depending on the supply voltage, voltages up to 1099 V DC may occur on the terminals.

## F enclosure requirements

Connect the brake resistor to the brake terminals in each inverter module.

### 4.1.9 Shielding against Electrical Noise

Before mounting the mains power cable, mount the EMC metal cover to ensure best EMC performance.

## NOTICE

The EMC metal cover is only included in frequency converters with an RFI filter.


Illustration 4.14 Mounting of EMC shield.

### 4.1.10 Mains Connection

Mains and ground must be connected as detailed in Table 4.5.

| Terminal number | Function |
| :--- | :--- |
| $91-1,92-1,93-1$ | Mains R1/L1-1, S1/L2-1, T1/L3-1 |
| $91-2,92-2,93-2$ | Mains R2/L1-2, S2/L2-2, T2/L3-2 |
| 94 | Ground |

Table 4.5 Mains and Ground Connection Terminals

## NOTICE

Check the nameplate to ensure that the mains voltage of the frequency converter matches the power supply of the plant.

Ensure that the power supply can supply the necessary current to the frequency converter.

If the frequency converter is without built-in fuses, ensure that the appropriate fuses have the correct current rating.

### 4.1.11 External Fan Supply

In case the frequency converter is supplied by DC, or if the fan must run independently of the power supply, an external power supply can be applied. The connection is made on the power card.

| Terminal <br> number | Function |
| :--- | :--- |
| 100,101 | Auxiliary supply S, T |
| 102,103 | Internal supply S, T |

## Table 4.6 External Fan Supply Terminals

The connector located on the power card provides the connection of line voltage for the cooling fans. The fans are connected from factory to be supplied from a common AC line (jumpers between 100-102 and 101-103). If an external supply is needed, remove the jumpers and connect the supply to terminals 100 and 101 . Use a 5 A fuse for protection. In UL applications this should be LittleFuse KLK-5 or equivalent.

### 4.1.12 Fuses

## Branch circuit protection

To protect the installation against electrical and fire hazard, all branch circuits in an installation, switch gear, machines etc., must be short-circuited and overcurrent protected according to national/international regulations.

## Short-circuit protection

Protect the frequency converter against short-circuit to avoid electrical or fire hazard. Danfoss recommends using the fuses mentioned in to Table 4.18 to protect service personnel and equipment in case of an internal failure in the frequency converter. The frequency converter provides full short-circuit protection in case of a short-circuit on the motor output.

## Overcurrent protection

Provide overload protection to avoid fire hazard due to overheating of the cables in the installation. The frequency converter is equipped with an internal overcurrent protection, which can be used for upstream overload protection (UL-applications excluded). See 4-18 Current Limit. Moreover, fuses or circuit breakers can be used to provide the overcurrent protection in the installation. Overcurrent protection must always be carried out according to national regulations.

## UL compliance

The fuses in this section are suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering $100000 \mathrm{~A}_{\text {rms }}$ (symmetrical), 240 V , or 480 V , or 500 V , or 600 V depending on the frequency converter voltage rating. With the proper fusing the frequency converter Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR) is 100000 Arms.

| Power size | Enclosure | Rating |  | Bussmann | Spare | Estimated fuse power loss [W] |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Size | Voltage (UL) | Amperes | P/N | P/N | 400 V | 460 V |
| P315T5 | F8/F9 | 700 | 700 | 170 M 4017 | 176F9179 | 25 | 19 |
| P355T5 | F8/F9 | 700 | 700 | 170 M 4017 | 176F9179 | 30 | 22 |
| P400T5 | F8/F9 | 700 | 700 | 170 M 4017 | $176 \mathrm{F9179}$ | 38 | 29 |
| P450T5 | F8/F9 | 700 | 700 | 170 M 4017 | $176 F 9179$ | 3500 | 2800 |
| P500T5 | F10/F11 | 700 | 900 | 170 M 6013 | 176F9180 | 3940 | 4925 |
| P560T5 | F10/F11 | 700 | 900 | 170 M 6013 | 176F9180 | 2625 | 2100 |
| P630T5 | F10/F11 | 700 | 900 | 170 M 6013 | $176 F 9180$ | 3940 | 4925 |
| P710T5 | F10/F11 | 700 | 1500 | 170 M 6018 | 176F9181 | 45 | 34 |
| P800T5 | F12/F13 | 700 | 1500 | 170 M 6018 | $176 F 9181$ | 60 | 45 |
| P1M0T5 | F12/F13 | 700 | 1500 | 170 M 6018 | 176F9181 | 83 | 63 |

[^1]| Power size | Enclosure | Rating |  | Bussmann | Spare <br> Bussmann | Estimated fuse power loss [W] |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Size | Voltage (UL) | Amperes | P/N | P/N | 600 V | 690 V |
| P450T7 | F8/F9 | 700 | 630 | 170 M 4016 | $176 F 9179$ | 13 | 10 |
| P500T7 | F8/F9 | 700 | 630 | 170M4016 | 176F9179 | 17 | 13 |
| P560T7 | F8/F9 | 700 | 630 | 170 M 4016 | $176 \mathrm{F9179}$ | 22 | 16 |
| P630T7 | F8/F9 | 700 | 630 | 170 M 4016 | $176 \mathrm{F9179}$ | 24 | 18 |
| P710T7 | F10/F11 | 700 | 900 | 170 M 6013 | $176 F 9180$ | 26 | 20 |
| P800T7 | F10/F11 | 700 | 900 | 170 M 6013 | $176 F 9180$ | 35 | 27 |
| P90077 | F10/F11 | 700 | 900 | 170 M 6013 | $176 F 9180$ | 44 | 33 |
| P1M0T7 | F12/F13 | 700 | 1500 | 170 M 6018 | $176 F 9181$ | 26 | 20 |
| P1M2T7 | F12/F13 | 700 | 1500 | 170 M 6018 | 176F9181 | 37 | 28 |
| P1M4T7 | F12/F13 | 700 | 1500 | 170M6018 | $176 F 9181$ | 47 | 36 |

Table 4.8 Mains Fuses, 525-690 V

| Size/Type | Bussmann PN* | Rating | Siba |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| P500 | 170 M 8611 | $1100 \mathrm{~A}, 1000 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2078132.1000 |
| P560 | 170 M 8611 | $1100 \mathrm{~A}, 1000 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2078132.1000 |
| P630 | 170 M 6467 | $1400 \mathrm{~A}, 700 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2068132.1400 |
| P710 | 170 M 6467 | $1400 \mathrm{~A}, 700 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2068132.1400 |
| P800 | 170 M 8611 | $1100 \mathrm{~A}, 1000 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2078132.1000 |
| P1M0 | 170 M 6467 | $1400 \mathrm{~A}, 700 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2068132.1400 |

Table 4.9 Inverter module DC Link Fuses, 380-500V

| Size/Type | Bussmann PN* | Rating | Siba |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| P710 | 170 M 8611 | $1100 \mathrm{~A}, 1000 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2078132.1000 |
| P800 | 170 M 8611 | $1100 \mathrm{~A}, 1000 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2078132.1000 |
| P900 | 170 M 8611 | $1100 \mathrm{~A}, 1000 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2078132.1000 |
| P1M0 | 170 M 8611 | $1100 \mathrm{~A}, 1000 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2078132.1000 |
| P1M2 | 170 M 8611 | $1100 \mathrm{~A}, 1000 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2078132.1000 |
| P1M4 | 170 M 8611 | $1100 \mathrm{~A}, 1000 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2078132.1000 |

Table 4.10 Inverter module DC Link Fuses, 525-690V
*170M fuses from Bussmann shown use the -/80 visual indicator, -
TN/80 Type T, -/110 or TN/110 Type T indicator fuses of the same size and amperage may be substituted for external use.

## Supplementary fuses

|  | Size/Type | Bussmann PN* | Rating | Alternative Fuses |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| 2.5-4.0 A Fuse | P500-P1M0, $380-500 \mathrm{~V}$ | LPJ-6 SP or SPI | $6 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | Any listed Class J Dual <br> Element, Time Delay, 6 A |
|  | P710-P1M4, $525-690 \mathrm{~V}$ | LPJ-10 SP or SPI | $10 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | Any listed Class J Dual <br> Element, Time Delay, 10 A |
| 4.0-6.3 A Fuse | P500-P1M0, $380-500 \mathrm{~V}$ | LPJ-10 SP or SPI | $10 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | Any listed Class J Dual <br> Element, Time Delay, 10 A |
|  | P710-P1M4, 525-690 V | LPJ-15 SP or SPI | $15 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | Any listed Class J Dual <br> Element, Time Delay, 15 A |
| $\mathbf{6 . 3 - 1 0 ~ A ~ F u s e ~}$ | P500-P1M0, 380-500 V | LPJ-15 SP or SPI | $15 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | Any listed Class J Dual <br> Element, Time Delay, 15 A |
| $\mathbf{1 0 - 1 6 ~ A ~ F u s e ~}$ | P710-P1M4, 525-690 V | LPJ-20 SP or SPI | $20 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | Any listed Class J Dual <br> Element, Time Delay, 20A |
|  | P710-P1M4, 525-690 V | LPJ-20 SP or SPI | $25 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | Any listed Class J Dual <br> Element, Time Delay, 25 A |

## Table 4.11 Manual Motor Controller Fuses

| Enclosure size | Bussmann PN* | Rating |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| F8-F13 | KTK-4 | $4 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ |

Table 4.12 SMPS Fuse

| Size/Type | Bussmann PN* | LittelFuse | Rating |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| P355-P1M0, <br> $380-500 ~ V$ |  | KLK-15 | $15 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| P450-P1M4, <br> $525-690 ~ V ~$ |  |  |  |

Table 4.13 Fan Fuses

| Enclosure <br> size | Bussmann PN* | Rating | Alternative <br> fuses |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| F8-F13 | LPJ-30 SP or <br> SPI | $30 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | Any listed <br> Class J Dual <br> Element, Time <br> Delay, 30 A |

Table 4.14 30 A Fuse Protected Terminal Fuse

| Enclosure <br> size | Bussmann PN* | Rating | Alternative <br> fuses |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| F8-F13 | LPJ-6 SP or SPI | 6 A, 600 V | Any listed <br> Class J Dual <br> Element, Time <br> Delay, 6 A |

Table 4.15 Control Transformer Fuse

| Enclosure size | Bussmann PN* | Rating |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| F8-F13 | GMC-800MA | $800 \mathrm{~mA}, 250 \mathrm{~V}$ |

Table 4.16 NAMUR Fuse

| Frame size | Bussmann PN* | Rating | Alternative <br> fuses |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| F8-F13 | LP-CC-6 | $6 \mathrm{~A}, 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | Any listed <br> Class CC, 6A |

Table 4.17 Safety Relay Coil Fuse with PILS Relay

| Enclosure <br> size | Power | Type |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 380-500 V |  |  |
| F9 | P250 | ABB OETL-NF600A |
| F9 | P315 | ABB OETL-NF600A |
| F9 | P355 | ABB OETL-NF600A |
| F9 | P400 | ABB OETL-NF600A |
| F11 | P450 | ABB OETL-NF800A |
| F11 | P500 | ABB OETL-NF800A |
| F11 | P560 | ABB OETL-NF800A |
| F11 | P630 | ABB OT800U21 |
| F13 | P710 | Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP |
| F13 | P800 | Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP |
| 525-690 V |  |  |
| F9 | P355 | ABB OT400U12-121 |
| F9 | P400 | ABB OT400U12-121 |
| F9 | P500 | ABB OT400U12-121 |
| F9 | P560 | ABB OT400U12-121 |
| F11 | P630 | ABB OETL-NF600A |
| F11 | P710 | ABB OETL-NF600A |
| F11 | P800 | ABB OT800U21 |
| F13 | P900 | ABB OT800U21 |
| F13 | P1M0 | Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP |
| F13 | P1M2 | Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP |

Table 4.18 Mains Disconnectors

### 4.1.13 Motor Insulation

For motor cable lengths $\leq$ the maximum cable length listed in , the motor insulation ratings in Table 4.19 are recommended. Peak voltage can be up to twice the DClink voltage, and 2.8 times the mains voltage, due to transmission line effects in the motor cable. If a motor has lower insulation rating, use a dU/dt or sine-wave filter.

| Nominal mains voltage [V] | Motor insulation [V] |
| :--- | :--- |
| $U_{N} \leq 420$ | Standard $U_{\text {LL }}=1300$ |
| $420<\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{N}} \leq 500$ | Reinforced $\mathrm{U}_{\text {LL }}=1600$ |
| $500<\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{N}} \leq 600$ | Reinforced $\mathrm{U}_{\text {LL }}=1800$ |
| $600<\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{N}} \leq 690$ | Reinforced $\mathrm{U}_{\text {LL }}=2000$ |

Table 4.19 Motor Insulation Ratings

### 4.1.14 Motor Bearing Currents

All motors installed with FC 202 315kW or higher power drives should have NDE (Non-Drive End) insulated bearings installed to eliminate circulating bearing currents. To minimize DE (Drive End) bearing and shaft currents proper grounding of the drive, motor, driven machine, and motor to the driven machine is required.

## Standard Mitigation Strategies:

1. Use an insulated bearing
2. Apply rigorous installation procedures

- Ensure the motor and load motor are aligned
- Strictly follow the EMC Installation guideline
- Reinforce the PE so the high frequency impedance is lower in the PE than the input power leads
- Provide a good high frequency connection between the motor and the frequency converter for instance by screened cable which has a $360^{\circ}$ connection in the motor and the frequency converter
- Make sure that the impedance from frequency converter to building ground is lower that the grounding impedance of the machine. This can be difficult for pumps
- Make a direct earth connection between the motor and load motor

3. Lower the IGBT switching frequency
4. Modify the inverter waveform, $60^{\circ}$ AVM vs. SFAVM
5. Install a shaft grounding system or use an isolating coupling
6. Apply conductive lubrication
7. Use minimum speed settings if possible
8. Try to ensure the line voltage is balanced to ground. This can be difficult for IT, TT, TN-CS or Grounded leg systems
9. Use a dU/dt or sinus filter

### 4.1.15 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch

- Torque: $0.5-0.6 \mathrm{Nm}$ (5 in-lbs)
- Screw size: M3

This input can be used to monitor the temperature of an externally connected brake resistor. If the input between 104 and 106 is established, the frequency converter trips on warning/alarm 27 Brake IGBT. If the connection is closed between 104 and 105, the frequency converter trips on warning/alarm 27 Brake IGBT.
Install a KLIXON switch that is normally closed. If this function is not used, short-circuit 106 and 104 together.

- Normally closed: 104-106 (factory installed jumper)
- Normally open: 104-105

| Terminal number | Function |
| :--- | :--- |
| $106,104,105$ | Brake resistor temperature switch. |

Table 4.20 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch Terminals

## ACAUTION

If the temperature of the brake resistor gets too high and the thermal switch drops out, the frequency converter stops braking and the motor starts coasting.


Illustration 4.15 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch

### 4.1.16 Control Cable Routing

Tie all control wires down to the designated control cable routing. Remember to connect the shields in a proper way to ensure optimum electrical immunity.

## Fieldbus connection

Connections are made to the relevant options on the control card. For details, see the relevant fieldbus instruction. Place the cable in the provided path inside the
frequency converter and tie it down with other control wires.

## Installation of 24 V external DC supply

- Torque: 0.5-0.6 Nm (5 in-lbs)
- Screw size: M3

| Terminal <br> number | Function |
| :--- | :--- |
| $35(-), 36(+)$ | 24 V external DC supply |

Table 4.21 Terminals for 24 V External DC Supply

24 V DC external supply can be used as low-voltage supply to the control card and any option cards installed. This enables full operation of the LCP (including parameter setting) without connection to the mains. A warning of low voltage is given when 24 V DC has been connected; however, there is no tripping.

## NOTICE

Use 24 V DC PELV supply to ensure correct galvanic isolation (type PELV) on the control terminals of the frequency converter.

### 4.1.17 Access to Control Terminals

All terminals to the control cables are located beneath the LCP. They are accessed by opening the door of the IP21/ IP54 unit, or by removing the covers of the IP00 unit.

### 4.1.18 Electrical Installation, Control Terminals

To connect the cable to the terminal:

1. Strip the insulation by about $9-10 \mathrm{~mm}$


## Illustration 4.16 Stripping of Insulation

2. Insert a screwdriver ${ }^{11}$ in the square hole.
3. Insert the cable in the adjacent circular hole.


Illustration 4.17 Inserting Cable
4. Remove the screwdriver. The cable is now mounted in the terminal.

1) Maximum $0.4 \times 2.5 \mathrm{~mm}$

To remove the cable from the terminal:

1. Insert a screwdriver ${ }^{1)}$ in the square hole.
2. Pull out the cable.
1) Max. $0.4 \times 2.5 \mathrm{~mm}$


Illustration 4.18 Removing Cable


Illustration 4.19 Unplugging Control Terminals

### 4.2 Connection Examples

### 4.2.1 Start/Stop

Terminal $18=5-10$ Terminal 18 Digital Input [8] Start Terminal $27=5-12$ Terminal 27 Digital Input [0] No operation (Default coast inverse)
Terminal 37 = Safe Torque Off


Start/Stop
Illustration 4.20 Wiring Start/Stop

### 4.2.2 Pulse Start/Stop

Terminal $18=5-10$ Terminal 18 Digital Input [9] Latched start
Terminal 27=5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input [6] Stop inverse Terminal $37=$ Safe Torque Off



Illustration 4.21 Wiring Pulse Start/Stop

### 4.2.3 Speed Up/Down

Terminals 29/32 $=$ Speed up/down
Terminal $18=5-10$ Terminal 18 Digital Input [9] Start (default)

Terminal $27=5-12$ Terminal 27 Digital Input [19] Freeze reference

Terminal $29=5-13$ Terminal 29 Digital Input [21] Speed up

Terminal $32=5-14$ Terminal 32 Digital Input [22] Speed down

## NOTICE

Terminal 29 only in FC x02 (x=series type).


Illustration 4.22 Speed Up/Down

### 4.2.4 Potentiometer Reference

## Voltage reference via a potentiometer

Reference Source $1=[1]$ Analog input 53 (default)
Terminal 53, Low Voltage $=0 \mathrm{~V}$
Terminal 53, High Voltage $=10 \mathrm{~V}$
Terminal 53, Low Ref./Feedback $=0$ RPM
Terminal 53, High Ref./Feedback $=1500$ RPM
Switch S201 = OFF (U)


Illustration 4.23 Potentiometer Reference

### 4.3 Electrical Installation - additional

### 4.3.1 Electrical Installation, Control Cables



Illustration 4.24

## A=Analog, $\mathrm{D}=$ Digital

*Terminal 37 (optional) is used for Safe Torque Off. For Safe Torque Off installation instructions, refer to the Safe Torque Off Operating Instructions for Danfoss VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ Frequency Converters.
**Do not connect cable screen.


Illustration 4.25 Diagram Showing all Electrical Terminals with NAMUR Option

Very long control cables and analog signals may in rare cases and depending on installation result in $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ground loops due to noise from mains supply cables.

If this occurs, it may be necessary to break the screen or insert a 100 nF capacitor between screen and chassis.

Connect the digital and analog inputs and outputs separately to the frequency converter common inputs (terminal 20,55,39) to avoid ground currents from both groups to affect other groups. For example, switching on the digital input may disturb the analog input signal.

## Input polarity of control terminals



Illustration 4.26 PNP (Source)


Illustration 4.27 NPN (Sink)

## NOTICE

Control cables must be screened/armoured.


Illustration 4.28 Grounding of Screened/Armoured Control Cables

Connect the wires as described in the product related Operating Instructions. Remember to connect the shields in a proper way to ensure optimum electrical immunity.

### 4.3.2 Switches S201, S202 and S801

Use switches S201 (A53) and S202 (A54) to configure the analog input terminals 53 and 54 as a current ( $0-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ ) or a voltage ( -10 V to +10 V ).

Enable termination on the RS-485 port (terminals 68 and 69) via the switch 8801 (BUS TER.).

See Illustration 4.24.

## Default setting:

S201 (A53) = OFF (voltage input)
S202 (A54) = OFF (voltage input)
S801 (Bus termination) = OFF

## NOTICE

When changing the function of S201, S202, or S801 do not to use force during the switch over. Remove the LCP fixture (cradle) when operating the switches. Do not operate the switches when the frequency converter is powered.


Illustration 4.29 Switch Location

### 4.4 Final Set-up and Test

To test the set-up and to ensure that the frequency converter is running, follow these steps.

Step 1. Locate the motor nameplate

## NOTICE

The motor is either star $(\mathrm{Y})$ or delta connected ( $\Delta$ ). This information is on the motor nameplate.



Illustration 4.30 Nameplate

Step 2. Enter the motor nameplate data in this parameter list.
To access this list, press [Quick Menu] then select Q2 Quick Setup.

1. 1-20 Motor Power [kW]

1-21 Motor Power [HP]
2. 1-22 Motor Voltage
3. 1-23 Motor Frequency
4. 1-24 Motor Current
5. 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed

Step 3. Activate the Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)
Performing an AMA ensures optimum performance. The AMA measures the values from the motor model equivalent diagram.

1. Connect terminal 37 to terminal 12 (if terminal 37 is available).
2. Connect terminal 27 to terminal 12 or set 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input to [0] No function.
3. Activate the AMA 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA).
4. Select between complete or reduced AMA. If a sine-wave filter is mounted, run only the reduced AMA, or remove the sine-wave filter during the AMA procedure.
5. Press [OK]. The display shows Press [Hand On] to start.
6. Press [Hand On]. A progress bar indicates if the AMA is in progress.

## Stop the AMA during operation

1. Press [Off] - the frequency converter enters into alarm mode and the display shows that the user terminated the AMA.

## Successful AMA

1. The display shows Press [OK] to finish AMA.
2. Press $[O K]$ to exit the AMA state.

## Unsuccessful AMA

1. The frequency converter enters into alarm mode. A description of the alarm can be found in .
2. Report Value in the [Alarm Log] shows that the last measuring sequence carried out by the AMA, before the frequency converter entered alarm mode. This number along with the description of the alarm helps with troubleshooting. If contacting Danfoss for service, state the alarm number and description.

## NOTICE

Incorrectly registered motor nameplate data or a too big difference between the motor power size and the frequency converter power size often causes unsuccessful AMA.

## Step 4. Set the speed limit and ramp time

- 3-02 Minimum Reference
- 3-03 Maximum Reference

Step 5. Set up the desired limits for speed and ramp time.

- 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] or 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]
- 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] or 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]
- 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time
- 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time


### 4.5 Additional Connections

### 4.5.1 Mechanical Brake Control

In hoisting/lowering applications, it is necessary to be able to control an electro-mechanical brake:

- Control the brake using any relay output or digital output (terminal 27 or 29).
- Keep the output closed (voltage-free) as long as the frequency converter is unable to support the motor, for example due to the load being too heavy.
- $\quad$ Select [32] Mechanical brake control in parameter group 5-4* Relays for applications with an electromechanical brake.
- The brake is released when the motor current exceeds the preset value in 2-20 Release Brake Current.
- The brake is engaged when the output frequency is less than the frequency set in 2-21 Activate Brake Speed [RPM] or 2-22 Activate Brake Speed $[\mathrm{Hz}]$, and only if the frequency converter carries out a stop command.

If the frequency converter is in alarm mode or in an overvoltage situation, the mechanical brake immediately cuts in.

### 4.5.2 Parallel Connection of Motors

The frequency converter can control several parallelconnected motors. The total current consumption of the motors must not exceed the rated output current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{N}}$ for the frequency converter.

## NOTICE

Installations with cables connected in a common joint as in Illustration 4.31, are only recommended for short cable lengths.

## NOTICE

When motors are connected in parallel, 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA) cannot be used.

## NOTICE

The electronic thermal relay (ETR) of the frequency converter cannot be used as motor overload protection for the individual motor in systems with parallelconnected motors. Provide further motor overload protection, for example thermistors in each motor or individual thermal relays (circuit breakers are not suitable as protection).


Illustration 4.31 Parallel Motor Connection

Problems may arise at start-up and at low RPM values if motor sizes are widely different because small motors' relatively high ohmic resistance in the stator calls for a higher voltage at start-up and at low RPM values.

### 4.5.3 Motor Thermal Protection

The electronic thermal relay in the frequency converter has received UL-approval for single motor overload protection, when 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection is set for [4] ETR Trip and 1-24 Motor Current are set to the rated motor current (see motor nameplate).
For thermal motor protection, it is also possible to use the MCB 112 PTC Thermistor Card option. This card provides ATEX certificate to protect motors in explosion hazardous areas, Zone 1/21 and Zone 2/22. When 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection is set to [20] ATEX ETR and is combined with the use of MCB 112, it is possible to control an Ex-e motor in explosion hazardous areas. Consult the product relevant Programming Guide for details on how to set up the frequency converter for safe operation of Ex-e motors.

## 5 How to operate the frequency converter

## The frequency converter can be operated in 3 ways:

1. Graphical Local Control Panel (GLCP), see 6.1.2
2. $\quad$ Numeric Local Control Panel (NLCP), see 6.1.3
3. RS-485 serial communication or USB, both for PC connection, see 6.1.4
If the frequency converter is fitted with fieldbus option, refer to relevant documentation.

### 5.1.1 How to operate graphical LCP (GLCP)

The following instructions are valid for the GLCP (LCP 102).

The GLCP is divided into 4 functional groups:

1. Graphical display with Status lines.
2. Menu keys and indicator lights (LED's) - selecting mode, changing parameters and switching between display functions.
3. Navigation keys and indicator lights (LEDs).
4. Operation keys and indicator lights (LEDs).

## Graphical display:

The LCD-display is back-lit with a total of 6 alpha-numeric lines. All data is displayed on the LCP which can show up to five operating variables while in [Status] mode.

## Display lines:

a. Status line: Status messages displaying icons and graphics.
b. Line 1-2: Operator data lines displaying data and variables defined or chosen by the user. By pressing the [Status] key, up to one extra line can be added.
c. Status line: Status messages displaying text.

The display is divided into 3 sections:

## Top section (a)

shows the status when in status mode or up to 2 variables when not in status mode and in the case of Alarm/ Warning.


The number of the Active Set-up (selected as the Active Set-up in 0-10 Active Set-up) is shown. When programming in another Set-up than the Active Set-up, the number of the Set-up being programmed appears to the right in brackets.

## Middle section (b)

shows up to 5 variables with related unit, regardless of status. In case of alarm/warning, the warning is shown instead of the variables.

It is possible to toggle between three status read-out displays by pressing the [Status] key.
Operating variables with different formatting are shown in each status screen - see below.

Several values or measurements can be linked to each of the displayed operating variables. The values / measurements to be displayed can be defined via

0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small, 0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small,
0-22 Display Line 1.3 Small, 0-23 Display Line 2 Large, and
0-24 Display Line 3 Large, which can be accessed via [QUICK MENU], "Q3 Function Setups", "Q3-1 General Settings", "Q3-11 Display Settings".

Each value/measurement readout parameter selected in 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small to 0-24 Display Line 3 Large has its own scale and number of digits after a possible decimal point. Larger numeric values are displayed with few digits after the decimal point.
Ex.: Current readout
5.25 A; 15.2 A 105 A.

## Status display I

This read-out state is standard after start-up or initialization.
Use [INFO] to obtain information about the value/ measurement linked to the displayed operating variables (1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 2, and 3).

See the operating variables shown in the display in this illustration. 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3 are shown in small size. 2 and 3 are shown in medium size.


Illustration 5.2

## Status display II

See the operating variables (1.1, 1.2, 1.3, and 2 ) shown in the display in Illustration 5.3.
In the example, Speed, Motor current, Motor power and Frequency are selected as variables in the first and second lines.
1.1, 1.2 and 1.3 are shown in small size. 2 is shown in large size.


Illustration 5.3

## Status display III:

This state displays the event and action of the Smart Logic Control. For further information, see .

| Status | 0.86 A |
| :--- | ---: |
| 778 RPM | 4.0 kW |
|  |  |
| State: 0 off 0 (off) |  |
| When:- |  |
| Do:- |  |
| Auto Remote Running |  |

Illustration 5.4

## Bottom section

always shows the state of the frequency converter in Status mode.


Illustration 5.5

## Display contrast adjustment

Press [status] and [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] for darker display
Press [status] and [ $\mathbf{\nabla}$ ] for brighter display
Indicator lights (LEDs)
If certain threshold values are exceeded, the alarm and/or warning LED lights up. A status and alarm text appear on the control panel.
The On LED is activated when the frequency converter receives power from mains voltage, a DC bus terminal, or an external 24 V supply. At the same time, the back light is on.

- Green LED/On: Control section is working.
- Yellow LED/Warn.: Indicates a warning.
- Flashing Red LED/Alarm: Indicates an alarm.


Illustration 5.6

## GLCP keys

## Menu keys

The menu keys are divided into functions. The keys below the display and indicator lamps are used for parameter setup, including choice of display indication during normal operation.


Illustration 5.7

## [Status]

Indicates the status of the frequency converter and/or the motor. 3 different readouts can be chosen by pressing the [Status] key: 5 line readouts, 4 line readouts or Smart Logic Control. Use [Status] for selecting the mode of display or for changing back to Display mode from either the Quick Menu mode, the Main Menu mode or Alarm mode. Also use the [Status] key to toggle single or double read-out mode.

## [Quick Menu]

Allows quick set-up of the frequency converter. The most common functions can be programmed here.

The [Quick Menu] consists of:

- Q1: My Personal Menu
- Q2: Quick Setup
- Q3: Function Setups
- Q5: Changes Made
- Q6: Loggings

The Function set-up provides quick and easy access to all parameters required for the majority of water and wastewater applications including variable torque, constant torque, pumps, dosing pumps, well pumps, booster pumps, mixer pumps, aeration blowers and other pump and fan applications. Amongst other features it also includes parameters for selecting which variables to display on the LCP, digital preset speeds, scaling of analog references, closed loop single zone and multi-zone applications and specific functions related to water and wastewater applications.

The Quick Menu parameters can be accessed immediately unless a password has been created via 0-60 Main Menu Password, 0-61 Access to Main Menu w/o Password, 0-65 Personal Menu Password or 0-66 Access to Personal Menu w/o Password.
It is possible to switch directly between Quick Menu mode and Main Menu mode.

## [Main Menu]

is used for programming all parameters.

The Main Menu parameters can be accessed immediately unless a password has been created via 0-60 Main Menu Password, 0-61 Access to Main Menu w/o Password, 0-65 Personal Menu Password or 0-66 Access to Personal Menu w/o Password. For the majority of water and wastewater applications it is not necessary to access the Main Menu parameters but instead the Quick Menu, Quick Setup and Function Setups provides the simplest and quickest access to the typical required parameters. It is possible to switch directly between Main Menu mode and Quick Menu mode.
Parameter shortcut can be carried out by pressing down the [Main Menu] key for 3 seconds. The parameter shortcut allows direct access to any parameter.

## [Alarm Log]

displays an Alarm list of the five latest alarms (numbered A1-A5). To obtain additional details about an alarm, use the arrow keys to manoeuvre to the alarm number and press [OK]. Information is displayed about the condition of the frequency converter before it enters the alarm mode.

## [Back]

reverts to the previous step or layer in the navigation structure.

## [Cancel]

last change or command will be cancelled as long as the display has not been changed.

## [Info]

displays information about a command, parameter, or function in any display window. [Info] provides detailed information when needed.
Exit Info mode by pressing either [Info], [Back], or [Cancel].


Table 5.1

## Navigation keys

The four navigation arrows are used to navigate between the different choices available in [Quick Menu], [Main Menu] and [Alarm Log]. Use the keys to move the cursor.

## [OK]

is used for choosing a parameter marked by the cursor and for enabling the change of a parameter.


Illustration 5.8

## Operation keys

for local control are found at the bottom of the control panel.


## [Hand on]

enables control of the frequency converter via the GLCP. [Hand on] also starts the motor, and it is now possible to give the motor speed reference by means of the arrow keys. The key can be Enabled [1] or Disabled [0] via 0-40 [Hand on] Key on LCP
The following control signals will still be active when [Hand on] is activated:

- [Hand on] - [Off] - [Auto on]
- Reset
- Coasting stop inverse (motor coasting to stop)
- Reversing
- Set-up select Isb - Set-up select msb
- Stop command from serial communication
- Quick stop
- DC brake


## NOT/CE

External stop signals activated by means of control signals or a serial bus will override a "start" command via the LCP.

## [Off]

stops the connected motor. The key can be Enabled [1] or Disabled [0] via 0-41 [Off] Key on LCP If no external stop function is selected and the [Off] key is inactive the motor can only be stopped by disconnecting the mains supply.

## [Auto on]

enables the frequency converter to be controlled via the control terminals and/or serial communication. When a start signal is applied on the control terminals and/or the bus, the frequency converter will start. The key can be Enabled [1] or Disabled [0] via 0-42 [Auto on] Key on LCP

## NOTICE

An active HAND-OFF-AUTO signal via the digital inputs has higher priority than the control keys [Hand on] [Auto on].

## [Reset]

is used for resetting the frequency converter after an alarm (trip). The key can be Enabled [1] or Disabled [0] via 0-43 [Reset] Key on LCP.

## The parameter shortcut

can be carried out by holding down the [Main Menu] key for 3 seconds. The parameter shortcut allows direct access to any parameter.

### 5.1.2 How to Operate Numeric LCP (NLCP)

The following instructions are valid for the NLCP (LCP 101).

The control panel is divided into 4 functional groups, see Illustration 5.10:

1. Numeric display
2. Menu key and indicator lights (LEDs) - changing parameters and switching between display functions
3. Navigation keys and indicator lights (LEDs)
4. Operation keys and indicator lights (LEDs)

## NOTICE

Parameter copy is not possible with Numeric Local Control Panel (LCP101).

## Select one of the following modes:

Status Mode: Displays the status of the frequency converter or the motor.
If an alarm occurs, the NLCP automatically switches to status mode.
A number of alarms can be displayed.
Quick Setup or Main Menu Mode: Display parameters and parameter settings.


Illustration 5.10 Numerical LCP (NLCP)


Illustration 5.11 Status display example


Illustration 5.12 Alarm display example

## Indicator lights (LEDs):

- Green LED/On: Indicates if control section is on.
- Yellow LED/Wrn.: Indicates a warning.
- Flashing red LED/Alarm: Indicates an alarm.


## Menu key

Select one of the following modes:

- Status
- Quick Setup
- Main Menu


## Main Menu

is used for programming all parameters.
The parameters can be accessed immediately unless a password has been created via 0-60 Main Menu Password, 0-61 Access to Main Menu w/o Password, 0-65 Personal Menu Password or 0-66 Access to Personal Menu w/o Password. Quick Setup is used to set up the frequency converter using only the most essential parameters.
The parameter values can be changed using the up/down arrows when the value is flashing.
Select Main Menu by pressing the [Menu] key a number of times until the Main Menu LED is lit.
Select the parameter group [xx-__] and press [OK]
Select the parameter [_-xx] and press [OK]
If the parameter is an array parameter select the array
number and press [OK]
Select the wanted data value and press [OK]

## Navigation keys

[Back]
for stepping backwards
[4] [ $\mathbf{v}$ ]
keys are used for manoeuvring between parameter groups, parameters and within parameters
[OK]
is used for choosing a parameter marked by the cursor and for enabling the change of a parameter.


Illustration 5.13 Display example

## Operation keys

Keys for local control are found at the bottom of the control panel.


Illustration 5.14 Operation keys of the numerical LCP (NLCP)

## [Hand on]

enables control of the frequency converter via the LCP. [Hand on] also starts the motor and it is now possible to enter the motor speed data by means of the navigation keys. The key can be [1] Enabled or[0] Disabled via $0-40$ [Hand on] Key on LCP.

External stop signals activated by means of control signals or a serial bus will override a 'start' command via the LCP.

## The following control signals are still active when [Hand

 on] is activated:- [Hand on] - [Off] - [Auto on]
- Reset
- Coasting stop inverse
- Reversing
- Set-up select Isb - Set-up select msb
- Stop command from serial communication
- Quick stop
- DC brake
[Off]
stops the connected motor. The key can be [1] Enabled or [0] Disabled via 0-41 [Off] Key on LCP.
If no external stop function is selected and the [Off] key is inactive the motor can be stopped by disconnecting the mains supply.


## [Auto on]

enables the frequency converter to be controlled via the control terminals and/or serial communication. When a start signal is applied on the control terminals and/or the bus, the frequency converter starts. The key can be [1] Enabled or [0] Disabled via 0-42 [Auto on] Key on LCP.

## NOTICE

An active HAND-OFF-AUTO signal via the digital inputs has higher priority than the control keys [Hand on] [Auto on].

## [Reset]

is used for resetting the frequency converter after an alarm (trip). The key can be [1] Enabled or[0] Disabled via $0-43$ [Reset] Key on LCP.

### 5.1.3 Changing Data

1. Press [Quick Menu] or [Main Menu] key.
2. Press $[\mathbf{\Delta}]$ and $[\mathbf{v}]$ to find parameter group to edit.
3. Press $[O K]$ key.
4. Press [ $\mathbf{\Delta}]$ and $[\mathbf{v}]$ to find parameter to edit.
5. Press [OK] key.
6. Press $[\mathbf{\Delta}]$ and $[\mathbf{v}]$ to select correct parameter setting. Or, to move to digits within a number, press keys. Cursor indicates digit selected to change. [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] increases the value, [ $\mathbf{v}$ ] decreases the value.
7. Press [Cancel] to disregard change, or press [OK] to accept change and enter new setting.

### 5.1.4 Changing a Text Value

If the selected parameter is a text value, change the text value with the $[\mathbf{\Delta}] /[\mathbf{v}]$ keys.
[ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] increases the value, and [ $\mathbf{v}]$ decreases the value. Place the cursor on the value to be saved and press [OK].

| 740 RPM | 10.64 A |
| :--- | ---: |
| Basic Settings | $1^{\wedge}[1]$ |
| $0-01$ Language | $0-0 *$ |
| [0] English | $\boxed{\Delta}$ |

Illustration 5.15 Display Example

### 5.1.5 Changing a Group of Numeric Data Values

If the selected parameter represents a numeric data value, change the selected data value with the $[\triangleleft]$ and $[\downarrow]$ keys as well as the up/down $[\mathbf{\Delta}][\mathbf{v}]$ keys. Press [ $\mathbf{\bullet}]$ and $[\boldsymbol{\bullet}]$ to move the cursor horizontally.


[^2]Press [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] and [ $\mathbf{v}$ ] to change the data value. [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] increases the data value, and $[\mathbf{v}]$ decreases the data value. Place the cursor on the value to be saved and press [OK].


Illustration 5.17 Display Example

### 5.1.6 Changing of Data Value, Step-by-Step

Certain parameters can be changed step by step or infinitely variably. This applies to parameter 1-20 Motor Power [kW], parameter 1-22 Motor Voltage and parameter 1-23 Motor Frequency.
The parameters are changed both as a group of numeric data values and as numeric data values infinitely variably.

### 5.1.7 Readout and Programming of Indexed Parameters

Parameters are indexed when placed in a rolling stack. 15-30 Alarm Log: Error Code to 15-32 Alarm Log: Time contain a fault log which can be read out. Select a parameter, press $[\mathrm{OK}]$, and use [ $\mathbf{\Delta}]$ and [ $\mathbf{v}$ ] to scroll through the value log.

Use parameter 3-10 Preset Reference as another example: Select the parameter, press [OK], and use [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] and [ $\mathbf{v}$ ] to scroll through the indexed values. To change the parameter value, select the indexed value and press [OK]. Change the value by [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] and [ $\mathbf{v}$ ]. Press [OK] to accept the new setting. Press [Cancel] to abort. Press [Back] to leave the parameter.

### 5.1.8 Tips and Tricks

- For the majority of water and wastewater applications the Quick Menu, Quick Set-up and Function Set-up provides the simplest and quickest access to all the typical parameters required.
- Whenever possible, performing an AMA, ensures best shaft performance.
- Contrast of the display can be adjusted by pressing [Status] and [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] for darker display or by pressing [Status] and [ $\mathbf{V}$ ] for brighter display.
- Under [Quick Menu] and [Changes Made] all parameters that have been changed from factory settings are displayed.
- Press and hold [Main Menu] key for 3 s for access to any parameter.
- For service purposes it is recommended to copy all parameters to the LCP, see 0-50 LCP Copy for further information.


### 5.1.9 Quick Transfer of Parameter Settings when Using GLCP

Once the set-up of a frequency converter is complete, store (back up) the parameter settings in the GLCP or on a PC via MCT 10 Set-up Software.

## AWARNING

Stop the motor before performing any of these operations.

## Data storage in LCP

1. Go to $0-50$ LCP Copy.
2. Press [OK].
3. Select [1] All to LCP.
4. Press [OK].

All parameter settings are now stored in the GLCP indicated by the progress bar. When $100 \%$ is reached, press [OK].

The GLCP can now be connected to another frequency converter and the parameter settings copied to this frequency converter.

## Data transfer from LCP to frequency converter

1. Go to $0-50$ LCP Copy.
2. Press [OK].
3. Select [2] All from LCP.
4. Press [OK]

The parameter settings stored in the GLCP are now transferred to the frequency converter indicated by the progress bar. When $100 \%$ is reached, press [OK].

### 5.1.10 Initialisation to Default Settings

There are 2 ways to initialise the frequency converter to default: Recommended initialisation and manual initialisation.
Be aware that they have different impact according to the following description.

Recommended initialisation (via 14-22 Operation Mode)

1. Select 14-22 Operation Mode.
2. Press [OK].
3. Select [2] Initialisation (for NLCP select " 2 ").
4. Press $[O K]$.
5. Remove power to unit and wait for display to turn off.
6. Reconnect power and the frequency converter is reset. Note that first start-up takes a few more seconds.
7. Press [Reset]

14-22 Operation Mode initialises all except:
14-50 RFI Filter
8-30 Protocol
8-31 Address
8-32 Baud Rate
8-35 Minimum Response Delay
8-36 Max Response Delay
8-37 Maximum Inter-Char Delay
15-00 Operating hours to 15-05 Over Volt's
15-20 Historic Log: Event to 15-22 Historic Log: Time
15-30 Alarm Log: Error Code to 15-32 Alarm Log: Time

## NOTICE

Parameters selected in 0-25 My Personal Menu stay present with default factory setting.

## Manual initialisation

## NOTICE

When carrying out manual initialisation, serial communication, RFI filter settings and fault log settings are reset. Removes parameters selected in 0-25 My Personal Menu.

1. Disconnect from mains and wait until the display turns off.
2. Press

2a [Status] - [Main Menu] - [OK] at the same time while powering up for Graphical LCP (GLCP).
2b [Menu] while powering up for LCP 101, Numerical Display.
3. Release the keys after 5 s .
4. The frequency converter is now programmed according to default settings.

This parameter initialises all except:
15-00 Operating hours
15-03 Power Up's
15-04 Over Temp's
15-05 Over Volt's

### 5.1.11 RS-485 Bus Connection

One or more frequency converters can be connected to a controller (or master) using the RS-485 standard interface. Terminal 68 is connected to the $P$ signal ( $T X+, R X+$ ), while terminal 69 is connected to the N signal ( $\mathrm{TX}-, \mathrm{RX}-$ ).

If more than one frequency converter is connected to a master, use parallel connections.


Illustration 5.18 Connection Example.

To avoid potential equalising currents in the screen, ground the cable screen via terminal 61 , which is connected to the frame via an RC-link.

## Bus termination

Terminate the RS-485 bus by a resistor network at both ends. If the frequency converter is the first or the last device in the RS-485 loop, set the switch S801 on the control card for ON.
For more information, see the paragraph Switches S201, S202, and S801.

### 5.1.12 How to Connect a PC to the Frequency Converter

To control or program the frequency converter from a PC, install the PC-based configuration tool MCT 10 Set-up Software.
The PC is connected via a standard (host/device) USB cable, or via the RS-485 interface as shown in chapter 5.1.11 RS-485 Bus Connection.

## NOTICE

The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals. The USB connection is connected to protective earth. Use only an isolated laptop as PC connection to the USB connector on the frequency converter.


Illustration 5.19 USB Connection to Frequency Converter

### 5.1.13 PC Software Tools

## PC-based MCT 10 Set-up Software

All frequency converters are equipped with a serial communication port. Danfoss provides a PC tool for communication between PC and frequency converter. Check the section on for detailed information on this tool.

## MCT 10 Set-up Software

MCT 10 Set-up Software has been designed as an easy to use interactive tool for setting parameters in our frequency converters.
The MCT 10 Set-up Software is useful for:

- Planning a communication network off-line. MCT 10 Set-up Software contains a complete frequency converter database.
- Commissioning frequency converters on line.
- Saving settings for all frequency converters.
- Replacing a frequency converter in a network.
- Simple and accurate documentation of frequency converter settings after commissioning.
- Expanding an existing network.
- Future developed frequency converters are supported.

MCT 10 Set-up Software supports Profibus DP-V1 via a master class 2 connection. It enables online reading/ writing of parameters in a frequency converter via the Profibus network. This network eliminates the need for an extra communication network.

## Save frequency converter settings:

1. Connect a PC to the unit via USB com port. (NOTE: Use a PC, which is isolated from the
mains, with the USB port. Failure to do so may damage equipment.).
2. Open MCT 10 Set-up Software.
3. Select Read from drive.
4. Select Save as.

All parameters are now stored in the PC.

## Load frequency converter settings:

1. Connect a PC to the frequency converter via USB com port.
2. Open MCT 10 Set-up Software.
3. Select Open - stored files are shown.
4. Open the appropriate file.
5. Select Write to drive.

All parameter settings are now transferred to the frequency converter.

A separate manual for MCT 10 Set-up Software is available from www.Danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/ Softwaredownload/DDPC+Software+Program.htm.

The MCT 10 Set-up software modules
The following modules are included in the software package.

| $+\cdots$ | MCT Set-up 10 Software <br> Setting parameters <br> Copy to and from frequency converters <br> Documentation and print of parameter settings <br> incl. diagrams |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | Ext. user interface <br> Preventive Maintenance Schedule <br> Clock settings <br> Timed Action Programming <br> Smart Logic Controller Set-up |

Table 5.2

## Ordering number:

Order the CD containing MCT 10 Set-up Software using code number 130B1000.

The software can be downloaded from the Danfoss internet site www.Danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/DDPC+Software+Program.htm

## 6 How to programme the frequency converter

### 6.1 How to programme

The parameters are grouped into various parameter groups for easy selection of the correct parameter for optimised frequency converter operation.

Overview of parameter groups

| Group | Title | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0-** | Operation/Display | Parameters related to the fundamental functions of the frequency converter, function of the LCP keys and configuration of the LCP display. |
| 1-** | Load/Motor | Parameter group for motor settings. |
| 2-** | Brakes | Parameter group for setting brake features in the frequency converter. |
| 3-** | Reference/Ramps | Parameters for reference handling, definitions of limitations, and configuration of the reaction of the frequency converter to changes. |
| 4-** | Limits/Warnings | Parameter group for configuring limits and warnings. |
| 5-** | Digital In/Out | Parameter group for configuring the digital inputs and outputs. |
| 6-** | Analog In/Out | Parameter group for configuration of the analog inputs and outputs. |
| 8-** | Communication and Options | Parameter group for configuring communications and options. |
| 9-** | Profibus | Parameter group for Profibus-specific parameters (requires profibus option). |
| 10-** | DeviceNet Fieldbus | Parameter group for DeviceNet-specific parameters (requires DeviceNet option). |
| 13-** | Smart Logic | Parameter group for Smart Logic Control |
| 14-** | Special Functions | Parameter group for configuring special frequency converter functions. |
| 15-** | Drive Information | Parameter group containing frequency converter information such as operating data, hardware configuration and software versions. |
| 16-** | Data Readouts | Parameter group for data read-outs, e.g. actual references, voltages, control, alarm, warning and status words. |
| 18-** | Info and Readouts | This parameter group contains the last 10 preventive maintenance logs. |
| 20-** | Drive Closed Loop | This parameter group is used for configuring the closed loop PID controller that controls the output frequency of the unit. |
| 21-** | Extended Closed Loop | Parameters for configuring the 3 extended closed loop PID controllers. |
| 22-** | Application Functions | These parameters monitor water applications. |
| 23-** | Time-based Functions | These parameters are for actions needed to be performed on a daily or weekly basis, e.g. different references for working hours/non-working hours. |
| 24-** | Application Functions 2 | Parameters for the drive bypass. |
| 25-** | Basic Cascade Controller Functions | Parameters for configuring the basic cascade controller for sequence control of multiple pumps. |
| 26-** | Analog I/O Option MCB 109 | Parameters for configuring the analog I/0 option MCB 109. |
| 27-** | Extended Cascade Control | Parameters for configuring the extended cascade control (MCO 101/MCO 102). |
| 29-** | Water Application Functions | Parameters for setting water specific functions. |
| 30-** | Special Features | Parameters for configuring the brake resistor value. |
| 31-** | Bypass Option | Parameters for configuring the bypass option (MCO 104). |
| 35-** | Sensor Input Option | Parameters for configuring the sensor input option (MCB 114) |

Table 6.1 Parameter Groups
Parameter descriptions and selections are displayed in the graphic LCP (GLCP) or numeric LCP (NLCP) in the display area. (See for details.) Access the parameters by pressing [Quick Menu] or [Main Menu] on the LCP. The Quick Menu is used primarily for commissioning the unit at start-up by providing those parameters necessary to start operation. The Main Menu provides access to all parameters for detailed application programming.

All digital input/output and analog input/output terminals are multifunctional. All terminals have factory default functions suitable for the majority of water applications, but if other special functions are required, they must be programmed in parameter groups 5-** Digital In/out or 6-** Analog In/out.

### 6.1.1 Quick Menu Mode

The GLCP provides access to all parameters listed under the Quick Menus. To set parameters using the [Quick Menu] key:

Pressing [Quick Menu] the list indicates the different areas contained in the Quick menu.

## Efficient parameter set-up for water applications

The parameters can easily be set up for the vast majority of the water and wastewater applications only by using the [Quick Menu].

The optimum way to set parameters through the [Quick Menu] is by following the below steps:

1. Press [Quick Setup] for selecting basic motor settings, ramp times, etc.
2. Press [Function Setups] for setting up the required functionality of the frequency converter - if not already covered by the settings in [Quick Setup].
3. Select between General Settings, Open Loop Settings and Closed Loop Settings.
It is recommended to do the set-up in the order listed.

| 40.0\% | 4.84 A | $1(1)$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Quick Menus |  |  |
| 「Q1 My Personal Menu |  |  |
| Q2 Quick Setup |  |  |
| Q3 Function Setups |  |  |
| Q5 Changes Made $\quad$ - |  |  |

Illustration 6.1 Quick Menu View

| Par. | Designation | $[$ Units $]$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $0-01$ | Language |  |
| $1-20$ | Motor Power | $[\mathrm{kW}]$ |
| $1-22$ | Motor Voltage | $[\mathrm{V}]$ |
| $1-23$ | Motor Frequency | $[\mathrm{Hz}]$ |
| $1-24$ | Motor Current | $[\mathrm{A}]$ |
| $1-25$ | Motor Nominal Speed | $[\mathrm{RPM}]$ |
| $3-41$ | Ramp 1 Ramp up Time | $[\mathrm{s}]$ |
| $3-42$ | Ramp 1 Ramp down Time | $[\mathrm{s}]$ |
| $4-11$ | Motor Speed Low Limit | $[\mathrm{RPM}]$ |
| $4-13$ | Motor Speed High Limit | $[\mathrm{RPM}]$ |
| $1-29$ | Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA) |  |

Table 6.2 Quick Setup parameters. See

If No Operation is selected in terminal 27 no connection to +24 V on terminal 27 is necessary to enable start. If Coast Inverse (factory default value) is selected in Terminal 27, a connection to +24 V is necessary to enable start.

## NOTICE

For detailed parameter descriptions, see .

### 6.1.2 Q1 My Personal Menu

Parameters defined by the user can be stored in Q1 My Personal Menu.

Select My Personal Menu to display only the parameters, which have been pre-selected and programmed as personal parameters. For example, a pump or equipment OEM may have pre-programmed these to be in My Personal Menu during factory commissioning to make on site commissioning/fine tuning simpler. These parameters are selected in par. 0-25 My Personal Menu. Up to 20
different parameters can be defined in this menu.

Table 6.3 Q1 My Personal Menu

### 6.1.3 Q2 Quick Setup

The parameters in Q2 Quick Setup are the basic parameters which are always needed to set-up the frequency converter to operation.

```
Parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1
```

Parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1
Parameter 20-93 PID Proportional Gain
Parameter 20-93 PID Proportional Gain
Parameter 20-94 PID Integral Time

```
Parameter 20-94 PID Integral Time
```

| Parameter number and name | Unit |
| :--- | :--- |
| 0-01 Language |  |
| Parameter 1-20 Motor Power [kW] | kW |
| Parameter 1-22 Motor Voltage | V |
| Parameter 1-23 Motor Frequency | Hz |
| Parameter 1-24 Motor Current | A |
| Parameter 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed | RPM |
| Parameter 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time | s |
| Parameter 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time | s |
| Parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] | RPM |
| Parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] | RPM |
| Parameter 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA) |  |

## Table 6.4 Q2 Quick Setup

### 6.1.4 Q3 Function Set-ups

The Function Set-up provides quick and easy access to all parameters required for the majority of water and wastewater applications including variable torque, constant torque, pumps, dosing pumps, well pumps, booster pumps, mixer pumps, aeration blowers and other pump and fan applications. Amongst other features, it also includes parameters for selecting which variables to display on the LCP, digital preset speeds, scaling of analog references, closed loop single zone and multi-zone applications and specific functions related to water and wastewater applications.

## How to access Function Set-up - example:

1. Turn on the frequency converter (On LED lights)


## Illustration 6.2

2. Press the [Quick Menus] key (Quick Menus choices appear).


Illustration 6.3
3. Press $[\mathbf{\Delta}] /[\mathbf{v}]$ navigation keys to scroll down to Function Set-ups. Press [OK].


Illustration 6.4
4. Function Set-ups choices appear. Select Q3-1 General Settings. Press [OK].


## Illustration 6.5

5. Press $[\mathbf{\Delta}] /[\mathbf{v}]$ keys to scroll down to i.e. Q3-12 Analog Outputs. Press [OK].


Illustration 6.6
6. Select parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output. Press [OK].


Illustration 6.7
7. Press $[\mathbf{\Delta}] /[\mathbf{v}]$ keys to select between the different choices. Press [OK].


Illustration 6.8

How to programme the freque...

## Operating Instructions

The Function Setup parameters are grouped in the following way:

| Q3-10 Clock Settings | Q3-11 Display Settings | Q3-12 Analog Output | Q3-13 Relays |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0-70 Date and Time | 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small | Parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output | Relay $1 \Rightarrow 5-40$ Function Relay |
| 0-71 Date Format | 0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small | Parameter 6-51 Terminal 42 Output <br> Min Scale | Relay 2 $\Rightarrow$ 5-40 Function Relay |
| Parameter 0-72 Time Format | 0-22 Display Line 1.3 Small | Parameter 6-52 Terminal 42 Output <br> Max Scale | Option relay 7 $\Rightarrow$ <br> 5-40 Function Relay |
| Parameter 0-74 DST/Summertime | 0-23 Display Line 2 Large |  | Option relay 8 $\Rightarrow$ <br> $5-40 ~ F u n c t i o n ~ R e l a y ~$ |
| Parameter 0-76 DST/Summertime <br> Start | 0-24 Display Line 3 Large |  | Option relay 9 $\Rightarrow$ <br> $5-40 ~ F u n c t i o n ~ R e l a y ~$ |
| Parameter 0-77 DST/Summertime <br> End | Parameter 0-37 Display Text 1 |  |  |
|  | parameter 0-38 Display Text 2 |  |  |
|  | parameter 0-39 Display Text 3 |  |  |

Table 6.5 Q3-1 General Settings

| Q3-20 Digital Reference | Q3-21 Analog Reference |
| :--- | :--- |
| Parameter 3-02 Minimum Reference | Parameter 3-02 Minimum Reference |
| 3-03 Maximum Reference | 3-03 Maximum Reference |
| Parameter 3-10 Preset Reference | Parameter 3-10 Preset Reference |
| 5-13 Terminal 29 Digital Input | Parameter 6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage |
| 5-14 Terminal 32 Digital Input | Parameter 6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value |
| 5-15 Terminal 33 Digital Input | Parameter 6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value |


| Q3-30 Feedback Settings | Q3-31 PID Settings |
| :--- | :--- |
| Parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode | Parameter 20-81 PID Normal/ Inverse Control |
| 20-12 Reference/Feedback Unit | Parameter 20-82 PID Start Speed [RPM] |
| Parameter 3-02 Minimum Reference | Parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1 |
| 3-03 Maximum Reference | Parameter 20-93 PID Proportional Gain |
| Parameter 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage | Parameter 20-94 PID Integral Time |
| Parameter 6-21 Terminal 54 High Voltage |  |
| Parameter 6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value |  |
| Parameter 6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value |  |
| Parameter 6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time |  |
| Parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function |  |

### 6.1.5 Q5 Changes Made

Q5 Changes Made can be used for fault finding.

## Select Changes made to get information about:

- the last 10 changes. Use the up/down navigation keys to scroll between the last 10 changed parameters.
- the changes made since default setting.

Select Loggings to get information about the display line read-outs. The information is shown as graphs. Only display parameters selected in parameter 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small and 0-24 Display Line 3 Large can be viewed. It is possible to store up to 120 samples in the memory for later reference.

Note that the parameters listed in Table 6.6 to Table 6.6 for Q5 only serve as examples as they vary depending on the programming of the particular frequency converter.

| Parameter 20-94 PID Integral Time |
| :--- |
| Parameter 20-93 PID Proportional Gain |


| Parameter 20-93 PID Proportional Gain |
| :--- |
| Parameter 20-94 PID Integral Time |


| Analog Input 53 |
| :--- |
| Analog Input 54 |

### 6.1.6 Q6 Loggings

Q6 Loggings can be used for fault finding.

Notice that the parameters listed in Table 6.6 for Q6 only serve as examples as they vary depending on the programming of the particular frequency converter.

| Reference |
| :--- |
| Analog Input 53 |
| Motor Current |
| Frequency |
| Feedback |
| Energy Log |
| Trending Cont Bin |
| Trending Timed Bin |
| Trending Comparison |

### 6.1.7 Main Menu Mode

Both the GLCP and NLCP provide access to the main menu mode. Select the Main Menu mode by pressing [Main Menu]. Illustration 6.9 shows the resulting readout, which appears on the display of the GLCP.

Lines 2 to 5 on the display show a list of parameter groups which can be selected by toggling [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] and [ $\mathbf{v}]$.


Illustration 6.9 Display Example

Each parameter has a name and number which remain the same regardless of the programming mode. In the Main Menu mode, the parameters are divided into groups. The first digit of the parameter number (from the left) indicates the parameter group number.

All parameters can be changed in the Main Menu. The configuration of the unit (parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode) determines other parameters available for programming. For example, selecting closed loop enables more parameters related to closed loop operation. Option cards added to the unit enable more parameters associated with the option device.

### 6.1.8 Parameter Selection

In the Main Menu mode, the parameters are divided into groups. Press the navigation keys to select a parameter group.
The following parameter groups are accessible:

| Group no. | Parameter group |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0-** | Operation/Display |
| 1-** | Load/Motor |
| 2-** | Brakes |
| 3-** | References/Ramps |
| 4-** | Limits/Warnings |
| 5-** | Digital In/Out |
| 6-** | Analog In/Out |
| 8-** | Comm. and Options |
| 9-** | Profibus |
| 10-** | CAN Fieldbus |
| 11-** | LonWorks |
| 13-** | Smart Logic |
| 14-** | Special Functions |
| 15-** | FC Information |
| 16-** | Data Readouts |
| 18-** | Data Readouts 2 |
| 20-** | FC Closed Loop |
| 21-** | Ext. Closed Loop |
| 22-** | Application Functions |


| Group no. | Parameter group |
| :--- | :--- |
| $23-* *$ | Time Actions |
| $25-* *$ | Cascade Controller |
| $26-* *$ | Analog I/O Option MCB 109 |
| $27-* *$ | Cascade CTL Option |
| $29-* *$ | Water Application Functions |
| $31-* *$ | Bypass Option |

## Table 6.6 Parameter Groups

After selecting a parameter group, select a parameter with the navigation keys.
The middle section on the GLCP display shows the parameter number and name as well as the selected parameter value.

| 740RPM | 10.64 A | 1 [1] |
| :--- | ---: | ---: |
| Basic Settings |  | $0-0 *$ |
| $0-01$ Language | $\boxed{\square}$ |  |
| [0] English |  |  |
|  | $\square$ |  |

Illustration 6.10 Display Example

### 6.2 Commonly Used Parameters Explanations

### 6.2.1 Main Menu

The Main Menu includes all available parameters in the frequency converter.
All parameters are grouped in a logic way with a group name indicating the function of the parameter group. All parameters are listed by name and number in.

All parameters included in the Quick Menus (Q1, Q2, Q3, Q5 and Q6) can be found in the following.

Some of the most used parameters for $\mathrm{VLT}^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive applications are also explained in the following section.

For a detailed explanation of all parameters, refer to the VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive Programming Guide which is available at www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Documentations/Technical+Documentation.htm or by ordering at the local Danfoss office.

### 6.2.2 0-** Operation/Display

Parameters related to the fundamental functions of the frequency converter, function of the LCP keys and configuration of the LCP display.

## 0-01 Language

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Defines the language to be used in the display. <br> The frequency converter can be delivered with 4 different language packages. English and German are included in all packages. English cannot be erased or manipulated. |
| [0] * | English | Part of Language packages 1-4 |
| [1] | German | Part of Language packages 1-4 |
| [2] | French | Part of Language package 1 |
| [3] | Danish | Part of Language package 1 |
| [4] | Spanish | Part of Language package 1 |
| [5] | Italian | Part of Language package 1 |
| [6] | Swedish | Part of Language package 1 |
| [7] | Dutch | Part of Language package 1 |
| [10] | Chinese | Language package 2 |
| [20] | Finnish | Part of Language package 1 |
| [22] | English US | Part of Language package 4 |
| [27] | Greek | Part of Language package 4 |
| [28] | Portuguese | Part of Language package 4 |
| [36] | Slovenian | Part of Language package 3 |
| [39] | Korean | Part of Language package 2 |
| [40] | Japanese | Part of Language package 2 |
| [41] | Turkish | Part of Language package 4 |
| [42] | Traditional Chinese | Part of Language package 2 |
| [43] | Bulgarian | Part of Language package 3 |
| [44] | Serbian | Part of Language package 3 |
| [45] | Romanian | Part of Language package 3 |
| [46] | Hungarian | Part of Language package 3 |
| [47] | Czech | Part of Language package 3 |
| [48] | Polish | Part of Language package 4 |
| [49] | Russian | Part of Language package 3 |
| [50] | Thai | Part of Language package 2 |
| [51] | Bahasa Indonesian | Part of Language package 2 |


| 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Option: |  | Function: |
| [953] | Profibus Warning Word | Displays Profibus communication warnings. |
| [1005] | Readout Transmit Error Counter | View the number of CAN control transmission errors since the last power-up. |
| [1006] | Readout Receive <br> Error Counter | View the number of CAN control receipt errors since the last powerup. |
| [1007] | Readout Bus Off Counter | View the number of bus-off events since the last power-up. |
| [1013] | Warning Parameter | View a DeviceNet-specific warning word. One separate bit is assigned to every warning. |
| [1230] | Warning Parameter |  |
| [1397] | Alert Alarm Word |  |
| [1398] | Alert Warning Word |  |
| [1399] | Alert Status Word |  |
| [1500] | Operating hours | View the number of running hours of the frequency converter. |
| [1501] | Running Hours | View the number of running hours of the motor. |
| [1502] | kWh Counter | View the mains power consumption in kWh. |
| [1580] | Fan Running Hours |  |
| [1600] | Control Word | View the control word sent from the frequency converter via the serial communication port in hex code. |
| $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline[1601] \end{array}$ | Reference [Unit] | Total reference (sum of digital/ analog/preset/bus/freeze ref./catch up and slow-down) in selected unit. |
| [1602] | Reference [\%] | Total reference (sum of digital/ analog/preset/bus/freeze ref./catch up and slow-down) in percent. |
| [1603] | Status Word | Present status word. |
| [1605] | Main Actual Value [\%] | One or more warnings in a hex code. |
| [1609] | Custom Readout | View the user-defined readouts as defined in 0-30 Custom Readout Unit, 0-31 Custom Readout Min Value and 0-32 Custom Readout Max Value. |
| [1610] | Power [kW] | Actual power consumed by the motor in kW. |
| [1611] | Power [hp] | Actual power consumed by the motor in hp. |
| [1612] | Motor Voltage | Voltage supplied to the motor. |


| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [1613] | Frequency | Motor frequency, i.e. the output frequency from the frequency converter in Hz . |
| [1614] | Motor current | Phase current of the motor measured as effective value. |
| [1615] | Frequency [\%] | Motor frequency, i.e. the output frequency from the frequency converter in percent. |
| [1616] | Torque [ Nm ] | Present motor load as a percentage of the rated motor torque. |
| [1617] | Speed [RPM] | Speed in RPM (revolutions per minute) i.e. the motor shaft speed in closed loop based on the entered motor nameplate data, the output frequency and the load on the frequency converter. |
| [1618] | Motor Thermal | Thermal load on the motor, calculated by the ETR function. See also parameter group 1-9* Motor Temperature. |
| [1622] | Torque [\%] | Shows the actual torque produced in percentage. |
| [1626] | Power Filtered [kW] |  |
| [1627] | Power Filtered [hp] |  |
| [1630] | DC Link Voltage | Intermediate circuit voltage in the frequency converter. |
| [1632] | Brake Energy /s | Present brake power transferred to an external brake resistor. <br> Stated as an instantaneous value. |
| [1633] | Brake Energy Average | Brake power transferred to an external brake resistor. The mean power is calculated continuously for the most recent 120 s . |
| [1634] | Heatsink Temp. | Present heat sink temperature of the frequency converter. The cut-out limit is $95 \pm 5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$; cutting back in occurs at $70 \pm 5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. |
| [1635] | Inverter Thermal | Percentage load of the inverters. |
| [1636] | Inv. Nom. Current | Nominal current of the frequency converter. |
| [1637] | Inv. Max. Current | Maximum current of the frequency converter. |
| [1638] | SL Controller State | State of the event executed by the control. |
| [1639] | Control Card Temp. | Temperature of the control card. |


| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [1650] | External Reference | Sum of the external reference as a percentage, i.e. the sum of analog/ pulse/bus. |
| [1652] | Feedback[Unit] | Signal value in units from the programmed digital input(s). |
| [1653] | Digi Pot Reference | View the contribution of the digital potentiometer to the actual reference feedback. |
| [1654] | Feedback 1 [Unit] | View the value of feedback 1 . See also parameter group 20-0* Feedback. |
| [1655] | Feedback 2 [Unit] | View the value of feedback 2. See also parameter group 20-0* Feedback. |
| [1656] | Feedback 3 [Unit] | View the value of feedback 3. See also parameter group 20-0* Feedback. |
| [1658] | PID Output [\%] | Returns the drive closed loop PID controller output value in percent. |
| [1659] | Adjusted Setpoint | Displays the actual operating setpoint after it is modified by flow compensation. See parameter group 22-8* Flow Compensation. |
| [1660] | Digital Input | Displays the status of the digital inputs. Signal low=0; Signal high=1. Regarding order, see 16-60 Digital Input. Bit 0 is at the extreme right. |
| [1661] | Terminal 53 Switch Setting | Setting of input terminal 53. Current $=0$; Voltage $=1$. |
| [1662] | Analog Input 53 | Actual value at input 53 either as a reference or protection value. |
| [1663] | Terminal 54 Switch Setting | Setting of input terminal 54. Current=0; Voltage $=1$. |
| [1664] | Analog Input 54 | Actual value at input 54 either as reference or protection value. |
| [1665] | Analog Output 42 [mA] | Actual value at output 42 in mA. Use parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output to select the variable to be represented by output 42 . |
| [1666] | Digital Output [bin] | Binary value of all digital outputs. |
| [1667] | Pulse Input \#29 [Hz] | Actual value of the frequency applied at terminal 29 as a pulse input. |
| [1668] | Pulse Input \#33 [Hz] | Actual value of the frequency applied at terminal 33 as a pulse input. |
| [1669] | Pulse Output \#27 [Hz] | Actual value of pulses applied to terminal 27 in digital output mode. |
| [1670] | Pulse Output \#29 [Hz] | Actual value of pulses applied to terminal 29 in digital output mode. |
| [1671] | Relay Output [bin] | View the setting of all relays. |

## 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [1672] | Counter A | View the present value of counter A. |
| [1673] | Counter B | View the present value of counter B. |
| [1675] | Analog In X30/11 | Actual value of the signal on input X30/11 (General Purpose I/O Card. Option) |
| [1676] | Analog In X30/12 | Actual value of the signal on input X30/12 (general purpose I/O card. Optional) |
| [1677] | Analog Out X30/8 [mA] | Actual value at output X30/8 (general purpose I/O card. Optional) Use 6-60 Terminal X30/8 Output to select the variable to be shown. |
| [1678] | Analog Out X45/1 [mA] |  |
| [1679] | Analog Out X45/3 [mA] |  |
| [1680] | Fieldbus CTW 1 | Control word (CTW) received from the bus master. |
| [1682] | Fieldbus REF 1 | Main reference value sent with control word via the serial communications network e.g. from the BMS, PLC or other master controller. |
| [1684] | Comm. Option STW | Extended fieldbus communication option status word. |
| [1685] | FC Port CTW 1 | Control word (CTW) received from the bus master. |
| [1686] | FC Port REF 1 | Status word (STW) sent to the bus master. |
| [1690] | Alarm Word | One or more alarms in a hex code (used for serial communication). |
| [1691] | Alarm Word 2 | One or more alarms in a hex code (used for serial communication). |
| [1692] | Warning Word | One or more warnings in a hex code (used for serial communication). |
| [1693] | Warning Word 2 | One or more warnings in a hex code (used for serial communication). |
| [1694] | Ext. Status Word | One or more status conditions in a hex code (used for serial communication). |
| [1695] | Ext. Status Word 2 | One or more status conditions in a hex code (used for serial communication). |
| [1696] | Maintenance Word | The bits reflect the status for the programmed preventive maintenance events in parameter group 23-1* Maintenance. |


| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [1830] | Analog Input X42/1 | Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/1 on the analog I/O card. |
| [1831] | Analog Input X42/3 | Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/3 on the analog I/O card. |
| [1832] | Analog Input X42/5 | Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/5 on the analog I/O card. |
| [1833] | Analog Out X42/7 [V] | Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/7 on the analog I/O card. |
| [1834] | Analog Out X42/9 [V] | Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/9 on the Analog I/O card. |
| [1835] | Analog Out X42/11 [V] | Shows the value of the signal applied to terminal X42/11 on the Analog I/O card. |
| [1836] | Analog Input X48/2 [mA] |  |
| [1837] | Temp. Input X48/4 |  |
| [1838] | Temp. Input X48/7 |  |
| [1839] | Temp. Input X48/10 |  |
| [1850] | Sensorless Readout [unit] |  |
| [1860] | Digital Input 2 |  |
| [2117] | Ext. 1 Reference [Unit] | The value of the reference for extended closed loop controller 1. |
| [2118] | Ext. 1 Feedback [Unit] | The value of the feedback signal for extended closed loop controller 1. |
| [2119] | Ext. 1 Output [\%] | The value of the output from extended closed loop controller 1. |
| [2137] | Ext. 2 Reference [Unit] | The value of the reference for extended closed loop controller 2. |
| [2138] | Ext. 2 Feedback [Unit] | The value of the feedback signal for extended closed loop controller 2. |
| [2139] | Ext. 2 Output [\%] | The value of the output from extended closed loop controller 2. |
| [2157] | Ext. 3 Reference [Unit] | The value of the reference for extended closed loop controller 3. |
| [2158] | Ext. 3 Feedback [Unit] | The value of the feedback signal for extended closed loop controller 3. |
| [2159] | Ext. 3 Output [\%] | The value of the output from extended closed loop controller 3. |


| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [2230] | No-Flow Power | The calculated no-flow power for the actual operating speed. |
| [2316] | Maintenance Text |  |
| [2580] | Cascade Status | Status for the operation of the cascade controller. |
| [2581] | Pump Status | Status for the operation of each individual pump controlled by the cascade controller. |
| [2791] | Cascade Reference | Reference output for use with follower drives. |
| [2792] | \% Of Total Capacity | Readout parameter to show the system operating point as a \% capacity of total system capacity. |
| [2793] | Cascade Option Status | Readout parameter to show the status of the cascade system. |
| [2794] | Cascade System Status |  |
| [2795] | Advanced Cascade Relay Output [bin] |  |
| [2796] | Extended Cascade <br> Relay Output <br> [bin] |  |
| [2920] | Derag Power[kW] |  |
| [2921] | Derag Power[HP] |  |
| [3110] | Bypass Status <br> Word |  |
| [3111] | Bypass Running Hours |  |
| [9920] | HS Temp. (PC1) |  |
| [9921] | HS Temp. (PC2) |  |
| [9922] | HS Temp. (PC3) |  |
| [9923] | HS Temp. (PC4) |  |
| [9924] | HS Temp. (PC5) |  |
| [9925] | HS Temp. (PC6) |  |
| [9926] | HS Temp. (PC7) |  |
| [9927] | HS Temp. (PC8) |  |
| [9951] | PC Debug 0 |  |
| [9952] | PC Debug 1 |  |
| [9953] | PC Debug 2 |  |
| [9954] | PC Debug 3 |  |
| [9955] | PC Debug 4 |  |
| [9956] | Fan 1 Feedback |  |
| [9957] | Fan 2 Feedback |  |
| [9958] | PC Auxiliary Temp |  |
| [9959] | Power Card Temp. |  |

0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small
Option:

|  |  | Select a variable for display in line 1, <br> middle position. |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $[1662] *$ | Analog input <br> 53 | The options are the same as those listed <br> for par. 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small. |  |
| $0-22$ | Display Line 1.3 Small |  |  |
| Option: | Function: |  |  |
| $[1614] *$ | Motor <br> Current | Select a variable for display in line 1, <br> right position. |  |
| The options are the same as those listed <br> for 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small. |  |  |  |

## 0-23 Display Line 2 Large

## Option:

## Function:

|  |  | Select a variable for display in line 2. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| [1615] * | Frequency | The options are the same as those listed for <br> par. 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small |

## 0-24 Display Line 3 Large

Option:

| [1652] * | Feedback [Unit] | The options are the same as those <br> listed for 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | Select a variable for display in line 2. |
| 0-37 Display Text 1 |  |  |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| $0^{*}$ | [0- <br> $25]$ | In this parameter, it is possible to write an individual <br> text string for display in the LCP or to be read via <br> serial communication. If to be displayed <br> permanently, select Display Text 1 in 0-20 Display <br> Line 1.1 Small, 0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small, <br> 0-22 Display Line 1.3 Small, 0-23 Display Line 2 Large <br> or 0-24 Display Line 3 Large. Parameter 0-37 is linked <br> to Parameter 12-08 Host Name. Changing Parameter <br> 12-08 will change Parameter 0-37-but not in the <br> other direction. |

## 0-38 Display Text 2

Range: Function:

| 0* | $\begin{array}{r} {[0-} \\ 25] \end{array}$ | In this parameter, it is possible to write an individual text string for display in the LCP or to be read via serial communication. If to be displayed permanently, select Display Text 2 in $0-20$ Display Line 1.1 Small, 0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small, 0-22 Display Line 1.3 Small, 0-23 Display Line 2 Large or 0-24 Display Line 3 Large. Press [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] or [ $\mathbf{v}$ ] to change a character. Press [ $\mathbf{4}$ ] and [ $\boldsymbol{\downarrow}$ ] to move the cursor. When a character is highlighted by the cursor, this character can be changed. A character can be inserted by placing the cursor between 2 characters and pressing [ $\mathbf{\Delta}]$ or $[\mathbf{~}]$. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |


| 0-39 Display Text 3 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| 0* | $\begin{array}{\|c} {\left[\begin{array}{c} {[0-} \\ 25] \end{array}\right.} \end{array}$ | In this parameter it is possible to write an individual text string for display in the LCP or to be read via serial communication. If to be displayed permanently select Display Text 3 in 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small, 0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small, 0-22 Display Line 1.3 Small, 0-23 Display Line 2 Large or 0-24 Display Line 3 Large. Press [ $\mathbf{4}$ ] or [ $\mathbf{V}$ ] to change a character. Press [ $\mathbf{~}$ ] and [ $\downarrow$ ] to move the cursor. When a character is highlighted by the cursor, this character can be changed. A character can be inserted by placing the cursor between 2 characters and pressing [ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ] or [ $\mathbf{v}$ ]. |

## 0-70 Date and Time

| Range: | Function: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Size <br> related* | $\left[\begin{array}{lll}-0 & ] & \begin{array}{l}\text { Sets the date and time of the internal } \\ \text { clock. The format to be used is set in } \\ \text { 0-71 Date Format and parameter 0-72 Time } \\ \text { Format. }\end{array} \\ \hline\end{array}\right.$ |  |

## 0-71 Date Format

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| [0] | YYYY-MM-DD | Sets the date format to be used in the LCP. |
| $[1]$ | DD-MM-YYYY | Sets the date format to be used in the LCP. |
| $[2]$ | MM/DD/YYYY | Sets the date format to be used in the LCP. |

## 0-72 Time Format

## Option: Function:

|  |  | Sets the time format to be used in the LCP. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $[0]$ | 24 h |  |
| $[1]$ | 12 h |  |

## 0-74 DST/Summertime

Option: Function:

| Option. |  | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $[0] *$ | Off | Select how daylight saving time/summertime <br> should be handled. For manual DST/summertime <br> enter the start date and end date in <br> parameter 0-76 DST/Summertime Start and <br> parameter 0-77 DST/Summertime End. |
| $[2]$ | Manual |  |

## 0-76 DST/Summertime Start

| Range: | Function: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Size related** | $\left[\begin{array}{lll}-0-0\end{array}\right]$ | Sets the date and time when DST/ <br> summertime starts. The date is <br> programmed in the format selected in <br> $0-71$ Date Format. |


| 0-77 DST/Summertime End |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size related* | $\left[\begin{array}{ll}-0\end{array}\right]$ | Sets the date and time when DST/ <br> summertime ends. The date is <br> programmed in the format selected in <br> $0-71$ Date Format. |

### 6.2.3 1-0* General Settings

Define whether the frequency converter operates in open loop or closed loop.

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |$|$| [00 Configuration Mode |
| :--- |
| This parameter cannot be adjusted while |
| the motor is running. |

## NOTICE

When set for closed loop, the commands reversing and start reversing do not reverse the motor direction.

| Range: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Size <br> related* | $\begin{aligned} & {\left[\begin{array}{l} {[0.09-} \\ 2000.00 \\ k W] \end{array}\right.} \end{aligned}$ | Enter the nominal motor power in kW according to the motor nameplate data. The default value corresponds to the nominal rated output of the unit. Depending on the selections made in 0-03 Regional Settings, either parameter 1-20 Motor Power [kW] or 1-21 Motor Power [HP] is made invisible. |
| 1-22 Motor Voltage |  |  |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| Size <br> related* | $\begin{gathered} {[10-} \\ 1000 \mathrm{~V}] \end{gathered}$ | Enter the nominal motor voltage according to the motor nameplate data. The default value corresponds to |


| Range: | Function: |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | the nominal rated output of the frequency converter. |
| 1-23 Motor Frequency |  |  |
| Range: Function: |  |  |
| Size <br> related* | $\begin{gathered} \hline[20- \\ 1000 \\ \mathrm{~Hz}] \end{gathered}$ | Select the motor frequency value from the motor nameplate data. For 87 Hz operation with $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$ motors, set the nameplate data for $230 \mathrm{~V} / 50 \mathrm{~Hz}$. Adapt parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] and 3-03 Maximum Reference to the 87 Hz application. |


| 1-24 Motor Current |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | $[0.10-$ <br> $10000.00 \mathrm{~A}]$ | Enter the nominal motor current <br> value from the motor nameplate <br> data. This data is used for <br> calculating motor torque, thermal <br> motor protection etc. |

## 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed

| Range: | Function: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Size related* | $[100-60000$ <br> RPM $]$ | Enter the nominal motor speed <br> value from the motor nameplate <br> data. This data is used for <br> calculating automatic motor <br> compensations. |

## 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | NOT/CE <br> This parameter cannot be adjusted <br> while the motor is running. |
| $[0]$ | Off | No function |
| $[1]$ | Enable <br> Complete <br> AMA | Performs AMA of the stator resistance $\mathrm{Rs}_{\mathrm{s}}$ <br> the rotor resistance $\mathrm{Rr}^{\prime}$, the stator leakage <br> reactance $\mathrm{X}_{1}$, the rotor leakage reactance $\mathrm{X}_{2}$ <br> and the main reactance $\mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{h}}$. |
| $[2]$ | Enable <br> Reduced <br> AMA | Performs a reduced AMA of the stator <br> resistance $\mathrm{R}_{s}$ in the system only. Select this <br> option if an LC filter is used between the <br> frequency converter and the motor. |

## NOTICE

Parameter 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA) have no effect when 1-10 Motor Construction = [1] PM, nonsalient SPM.

Activate the AMA function by pressing [Hand On] after selecting [1] or [2]. See also the section Automatic Motor Adaptation in the Design Guide. After a normal sequence, the display reads: Press [OK] to finish AMA. After pressing [OK], the frequency converter is ready for operation.

## nOTICE

- For the best adaptation of the frequency converter, run AMA on a cold motor
- AMA cannot be performed while the motor is running


## NOTICE

Avoid generating external torque during AMA.

## NOTICE

If one of the settings in parameter group 1-2* Motor Data is changed, 1-30 Stator Resistance (Rs) to 1-39 Motor Poles return to default settings.

## NOTICE

Full AMA should be run without filter only while reduced AMA should be run with filter.

See section: Application Examples > Automatic Motor Adaptation in the Design Guide.

### 6.2.4 3-0* Reference Limits

| 3-02 |  | Minimum Reference |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | [-999999.999 - <br> par. 3-03 <br> ReferenceFeed- <br> backUnit] | Enter the minimum reference. The <br> minimum reference is the lowest <br> value obtainable by summing all <br> references. The minimum <br> reference value and unit matches <br> the configuration made in <br> parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode <br> and 20-12 Reference/Feedback Unit. <br> NOT/CE |
| This parameter is used in |  |  |
| open loop only. |  |  |


| 3-04 Reference Function |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Option: |  | Function: |
| $[0]$ * | Sum | Sums both external and preset reference <br> sources. |
| $[1]$ | External/ <br> Preset | Use either the preset or the external <br> reference source. <br> Shift between external and preset via a <br> command on a digital input. |

## 3-10 Preset Reference

Array [8]

| Range: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 0 \%* | $[-100-$ <br> $100 \%]$ | Enter up to 8 different preset references (0-7) in <br> this parameter, using array programming. The <br> preset reference is stated as a percentage of the <br> value Refmax (3-03 Maximum Reference, for <br> closed loop see 20-14 Maximum Reference/ <br> Feedb.). When using preset references, select <br> Preset ref. bit 0/1/2 [16], [17] or [18] for the <br> corresponding digital inputs in parameter group <br> $5-1 *$ Digital Inputs. |



[^3]

Illustration 6.12 Preset Reference Scheme

| 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range: |  |  | Function: |
| Size relate |  | $\begin{gathered} {[0.10-} \\ 3600 \mathrm{~s}] \end{gathered}$ | Enter the ramp-up time, that is, the acceleration time from 0 RPM to parameter 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed. Select a ramp-up time such that the output current does not exceed the current limit in 4-18 Current Limit during ramping. See ramp-down time in parameter 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time. |
| $\text { par. } 3-41=\frac{\operatorname{tacc} \times \text { nnom }[\text { par. } 1-25]}{\text { ref }[\text { RPM }]}[s]$ |  |  |  |
| 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time |  |  |  |
| Range: |  |  | Function: |
| Size relate |  | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline[0.10- \\ 3600 \mathrm{~s}] \end{array}$ | Enter the ramp-down time, that is, the deceleration time from parameter 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed to 0 RPM. Select a ramp-down time preventing overvoltage from arising in the inverter due to regenerative operation of the motor. The ramp-down time should also be long enough to prevent that the generated current exceeds the current limit set in 4-18 Current Limit. See ramp-up time in parameter 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time. |
| $\text { par. } 3-42=\frac{\text { tdec } \times \text { nnom }[\text { par. } .1-25]}{\text { ref }[\text { RPM }]}[s]$ |  |  |  |
| 3-84 Initial Ramp Time |  |  |  |
| Range: |  | Function: |  |
| 0 s * | $\begin{array}{r} {[0-} \\ 60 \mathrm{~s}] \end{array}$ | Enter the initial ramp-up time from zero speed to motor speed low limit, parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] or 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]. Submersible deep-well pumps can be damaged by running below minimum speed. A fast ramp time below minimum pump speed is recommended. This parameter may be applied as a fast ramp rate from zero speed to motor speed low limit. See Illustration 6.13. |  |



Illustration 6.13 Initial and Final Ramp Time


Illustration 6.14 Check Valve Ramp

## 3-86 Check Valve Ramp End Speed [RPM]

| Range: | Function: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Size related* | $[0-$ par. <br> $4-11 \mathrm{RPM}]$ | Set the speed in [RPM] below Motor <br> Speed Low Limit where the Check <br> Valve is expected to be closed and <br> the Check Valve should no longer <br> be active. |



Illustration 6.15


Illustration 6.16

## 3-88 Final Ramp Time

| Range: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| $0 \mathrm{~s}^{*}$ | $\left[\begin{array}{l}{[0-} \\ 60 \mathrm{~s}]\end{array}\right.$ | Enter the Final Ramp Time to be used when <br> ramping down from Motor Speed Low Limit, <br> parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] or <br> $4-12$ Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz], to zero speed. |
| Submersible deep well pumps can be damaged by |  |  |
| running below minimum speed. A fast ramp time |  |  |
| below minimum pump speed is recommended. This |  |  |
| parameter may be applied as a fast ramp rate from |  |  |
| Motor Speed Low Limit to zero speed. |  |  |



Parameter group for configuring the digital input and output.

## 5-01 Terminal 27 Mode

\left.| 5-01 Terminal 27 Mode |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Option: |  | Function: |
| NOT/CE |  |  |
| This parameter cannot be adjusted while |  |  |
| the motor is running. |  |  |$\right]$| $[0]$ * | Input | Defines terminal 27 as a digital input. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $[1]$ | Output | Defines terminal 27 as a digital output. |


| Range: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Size related* | $\begin{aligned} & \text { [ } 0 \text { - par. } \\ & 4-13 \\ & \text { RPM] } \end{aligned}$ | Enter the minimum limit for motor speed in RPM. The motor speed low limit can be set to correspond to the manufacturer's recommended minimum motor speed. The motor speed low limit must not exceed the setting in parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]. |
| 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] |  |  |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| Size <br> related* | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { [0- } \\ 60000 \\ \text { RPM] } \end{gathered}$ | Enter the maximum limit for motor speed in RPM. The motor speed high limit can be set to correspond to the manufacturer's maximum rated motor. The motor speed high limit must exceed the setting in parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]. The parameter name appears as either parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] or 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit $[\mathrm{Hz}]$, depending on <br> - the settings of other parameters in the Main Menu, and <br> - default settings based on geographical location. |

## NOTICE

Max. output frequency cannot exceed $10 \%$ of the inverter switching frequency (14-01 Switching Frequency).

## NOTICE

Any changes in parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] reset the value in 4-53 Warning Speed High to the same value as set in parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM].

[^4]
### 6.2.5 5-1* Digital Inputs

Parameters for configuring the input functions for the input terminals.
The digital inputs are used for selecting various functions in the frequency converter. All digital inputs can be set to the following functions:

Options [120] - [138] are related to the cascade controller functionality. For more information, see parameter group 25-** Cascade Controller.

| Digital input function | Option | Terminal |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| No operation | [0] | All *term 32, 33, 29, 19 |
| Reset | [1] | All |
| Coast inverse | [2] | All * term 27 |
| Coast and reset inverse | [3] | All |
| DC-brake inverse | [5] | All |
| Stop inverse | [6] | All |
| External interlock | [7] | All |
| Start | [8] | All |
| Latched start | [9] | All |
| Reversing | [10] | All |
| Start reversing | [11] | All |
| Jog | [14] | All |
| Preset reference on | [15] | All |
| Preset ref bit 0 | [16] | All |
| Preset ref bit 1 | [17] | All |
| Preset ref bit 2 | [18] | All |
| Freeze reference | [19] | All |
| Freeze output | [20] | All |
| Speed up | [21] | All |
| Speed down | [22] | All |
| Set-up select bit 0 | [23] | All |
| Set-up select bit 1 | [24] | All |
| Pulse input | [32] | term 29, 33 |
| Ramp bit 0 | [34] | All |
| Mains failure inverse | [36] | All |
| Ref source bit 0 | [42] | All |
| Hand/auto start | [51] | All |
| Run permissive | [52] | All |
| Hand start | [53] | All |
| Auto start | [54] | All |
| DigiPot increase | [55] | All |
| DigiPot decrease | [56] | All |
| DigiPot clear | [57] | All |
| Counter A (up) | [60] | 29, 33 |
| Counter A (down) | [61] | 29, 33 |
| Reset counter A | [62] | All |
| Counter B (up) | [63] | 29, 33 |
| Counter B (down) | [64] | 29, 33 |
| Reset counter B | [65] | All |
| Sleep mode | [66] | All |
| Reset maintenance word | [78] | All |


| Digital input function | Option | Terminal |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| PTC card 1 | $[80]$ | All |
| Latched pump derag | $[85]$ | All |
| Lead pump start | $[120]$ | All |
| Lead pump alternation | $[121]$ | All |
| Pump 1 interlock | $[130]$ | All |
| Pump 2 interlock | $[131]$ | All |
| Pump 3 interlock | $[132]$ | All |

Table 6.7 Functions for Digital Inputs
All $=$ Terminals 18, 19, 27, 29, 32, X30/2, X30/3, X30/4. X30/ are the terminals on MCB 101.

Functions dedicated to only one digital input are stated in the associated parameter.

All digital inputs can be programmed to these functions:

| [0] | No operation | No reaction to signals transmitted to terminal. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [1] | Reset | Resets frequency converter after a TRIP/ ALARM. Not all alarms can be reset. |
| [2] | Coast inverse | Leaves motor in free mode. Logic ' 0 ' $\Rightarrow$ coasting stop. <br> (Default Digital input 27): Coasting stop, inverted input (NC). |
| [3] | Coast and reset inverse | Reset and coasting stop inverted input (NC). Leaves motor in free mode and resets the frequency converter. Logic ' 0 ' $\Rightarrow$ coasting stop and reset. |
| [5] | DC-brake inverse | Inverted input for DC braking (NC). Stops motor by energising it with a DC current for a certain time period. See 2-01 DC Brake Current to 2-03 DC Brake Cut In Speed [RPM]. The function is only active when the value in 2-02 DC Braking Time is different from 0 . Logic ' 0 ' $\Rightarrow \mathrm{DC}$ braking. This selection is not possible when 1-10 Motor Construction is set to [1] PM, non salient SPM. |
| [6] | Stop inverse | Stop inverted function. Generates a stop function when the selected terminal goes from logical level ' 1 ' to ' 0 '. The stop is performed according to the selected ramp time (parameter 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time and 3-52 Ramp 2 Ramp Down Time. NOTICE <br> When the frequency converter is at the torque limit and has received a stop command, it may not stop by itself. To ensure that the frequency converter stops, configure a digital output to [27] Torque limit \& stop and connect this digital output to a digital input that is configured as coast. |


| [7] | External Interlock | Same function as Coasting stop, inverse, but External Interlock generates the alarm message external fault in the display when the terminal which is programmed for Coast Inverse is logic ' 0 '. The alarm message is also active via digital outputs and relay outputs, if programmed for External Interlock. The alarm can be reset using a digital input or the [Reset] key if the cause for the external interlock has been removed. A delay can be programmed in 22-00 External Interlock Delay. After applying a signal to the input, the reaction described above is delayed with the time set in 22-00 External Interlock Delay. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [8] | Start | Select start value for a start/stop command. ' 1 '=start, '0'=stop. <br> (Default Digital input 18) |
| [9] | Latched start | Motor starts, if a pulse is applied for min. 2 ms . Motor stops when Stop inverse is activated |
| [10] | Reversing | Changes direction of motor shaft rotation. Select Logic ' 1 ' to reverse. The reversing signal only changes the direction of rotation. It does not activate the start function. Select both directions in 4-10 Motor Speed Direction. (Default Digital input 19). |
| [11] | Start reversing | Used for start/stop and for reversing on the same wire. Signals on start are not allowed at the same time. |
| [14] | Jog | Used for activating jog speed. See 3-11 Jog Speed [Hz]. <br> (Default Digital input 29) |
| [15] | Preset reference on | Used for shifting between external reference and preset reference. It is assumed that [1] External/preset has been selected in parameter 3-04 Reference Function. Logic '0' = external reference active; logic ' 1 ' = one of the 8 preset references is active. |
| [16] | Preset ref bit 0 | Enables a selection of one of the 8 preset references according to Table 6.8. |
| [17] | Preset ref bit 1 | Enables a selection of one of the 8 preset references according to Table 6.8. |
| [18] | Preset ref bit 2 | Enables a selection of one of the 8 preset references according to Table 6.8. |


$|$| Preset ref. bit | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Preset ref. 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Preset ref. 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Preset ref. 2 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| Preset ref. 3 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| Preset ref. 4 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Preset ref. 5 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Preset ref. 6 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Preset ref. 7 | 1 | 1 | 1 |


|  |  | Table 6.8 Preset Ref. Bit |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $[19]$ | Freeze ref | Freezes actual reference. The frozen <br> reference is now the point of enable/ <br> condition for speed up and speed down to <br> be used. If speed up/down is used the |


| [34] | Ramp bit 0 | Select which ramp to use. Logic '0' selects ramp 1 while logic ' 1 ' selects ramp 2. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [36] | Mains failure inverse | Activates 14-10 Mains Failure. Mains failure inverse is active in the Logic ' 0 ' situation. |
| [42] | Ref source bit 0 | An active input in bit 0 selects AI54 as the reference source (see parameter group 3-1* References, option [35] Digital input select). An inactive input selects AI53. |
| [51] | Hand/Auto Start | Selects Hand or Auto Start. High = Auto On only, Low = Hand on only. |
| [52] | Run Permissive | The input terminal, for which the [52] Run Permissive has been programmed must be logic ' 1 ' before a start command can be accepted. Run permissive has a logic 'AND' function related to the terminal which is programmed for [8] Start, [14] Jog or [20] Freeze Output. This means that to start running the motor, both conditions must be fulfilled. If [52] Run Permissive is programmed on multiple terminals, it only needs to be logic ' 1 ' on one of the terminals to carry out the function. The digital output signal for Run Request ([8] Start, [14] Jog or [20] Freeze output) programmed in parameter group 5-3* Digital Outputs, or parameter group 5-4* Relays, is not affected by [52] Run Permissive. |
| [53] | Hand start | A signal applied puts the frequency converter into Hand mode as if [Hand On] has been pressed and a normal stop command is overridden. If disconnecting the signal, the motor stops. To make any other start commands valid, assign another digital input to Auto Start and apply a signal to this. [Hand On] and [Auto On] have no impact. [Off] overrides Hand Start and Auto Start. Press either [Hand On] or [Auto On] to make Hand Start and Auto Start active again. If there is no signal on neither Hand Start nor Auto Start, the motor stops regardless of any normal Start command applied. If a signal is applied to both Hand Start and Auto Start, the function is Auto Start. If pressing [Off], the motor stops regardless of signals on Hand Start and Auto Start. |
| [54] | Auto start | A signal applied puts the frequency converter into Auto mode as if [Auto On] has been pressed. See also [53] Hand Start. |
| [55] | DigiPot Increase | Uses the input as an INCREASE signal to the digital potentiometer function described in parameter group 3-9* Digital Pot.Meter. |
| [56] | DigiPot Decrease | Uses the input as a DECREASE signal to the digital potentiometer function described in parameter group 3-9* Digital Pot.Meter |
| [57] | DigiPot Clear | Uses the input to CLEAR the digital potentiometer reference described in parameter group 3-9* Digital Pot.Meter |


| [60] | Counter A <br> (up) | (Terminal 29 or 33 only) Input for increment <br> counting in the SLC counter. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| [61] | Counter A <br> (down) | (Terminal 29 or 33 only) Input for <br> decrement counting in the SLC counter. |
| [62] | Reset Counter <br> A | Input for reset of counter A. |
| [63] | Counter B <br> (up) | (Terminal 29 and 33 only) Input for <br> increment counting in the SLC counter. |
| [64] | Counter B <br> (down) | (Terminal 29 and 33 only) Input for <br> decrement counting in the SLC counter. |
| [65] | Reset Counter <br> B | Input for reset of counter B. |
| [66] | Sleep Mode | Forces the frequency converter into sleep <br> mode (see parameter group 22-4* Sleep <br> Mode). Reacts on the rising edge of signal <br> applied. |
| [78] | Reset <br> Preventive <br> Maintenance <br> Word | Resets all data in 16-96 Maintenance Word to <br> 0. |
| [80] | PTC Card1 | All digital inputs can be set to [80] PTC Card <br> 1. However, only one digital input must be <br> set to this option. |
| [85] | Latched Pump <br> Derag | Starts deragging. |

Options [120] - [138] are related to the cascade controller functionality. For more information, see parameter group 25-** Cascade Controller.

| [120] | Lead Pump <br> Start | Starts/stops the lead pump (controlled by <br> the frequency converter). A start also <br> requires applying a system start signal e.g. <br> to one of the digital inputs set for [8] Start. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| [121] | Lead Pump <br> Alternation | Forces alternation of the lead pump in a <br> cascade controller. 25-50 Lead Pump <br> Alternation must be set to either [2] At <br> Command or [3] At Staging or At Command. <br> 25-51 Alternation Event can be set to any of <br> the 4 options. |
| [130 | Pump1 <br> Interlock - <br> Pump9 <br> Interlock | The function depends on the setting in <br> 25-06 Number of Pumps. If set to [0] No, <br> then Pump1 refers to the pump controlled <br> by RELAY1 etc. If set to [1] Yes, Pump1 <br> refers to the pump controlled by the <br> frequency converter only (without any of <br> the built-in relays involved) and Pump2 to <br> the pump controlled by the relay RELAY1. <br> Variable speed pump (lead) cannot be <br> interlocked in the basic cascade controller. <br> See Table 6.9 |



## 5-13 Terminal 29 Digital Input

## Option:

## Function:

| $[0]$ * | No Operation | Same options and functions as parameter <br> group 5-1* Digital Inputs. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

## 5-14 Terminal 32 Digital Input

The parameter contains all options and functions listed in parameter group 5-1* Digital Inputs except for option [32] Pulse input.

## 5-15 Terminal 33 Digital Input

The parameter contains all options and functions listed in parameter group 5-1* Digital Inputs.

| $5-30$ |  | Terminal 27 Digital Output |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Option: |  |  |
| $[0]$ | No operation |  |
| $[1]$ | Control Ready |  |
| $[2]$ | Drive ready |  |
| $[3]$ | Drive rdy/rem ctrl |  |
| $[4]$ | Stand-by / no warning |  |
| $[5]$ | Running |  |
| $[6]$ | Running / no warning |  |
| $[8]$ | Run on ref/no warn |  |
| $[9]$ | Alarm |  |
| $[10]$ | Alarm or warning |  |
| $[11]$ | At torque limit |  |
| $[12]$ | Out of current range |  |
| $[13]$ | Below current, low |  |
| $[14]$ | Above current, high |  |
|  |  |  |

## 5-30 Terminal 27 Digital Output

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [15] | Out of speed range |  |
| [16] | Below speed, low |  |
| [17] | Above speed, high |  |
| [18] | Out of feedb. range |  |
| [19] | Below feedback, low |  |
| [20] | Above feedback, high |  |
| [21] | Thermal warning |  |
| [25] | Reverse |  |
| [26] | Bus OK |  |
| [27] | Torque limit \& stop |  |
| [28] | Brake, no brake war |  |
| [29] | Brake ready, no fault |  |
| [30] | Brake fault (IGBT) |  |
| [33] | Safe stop active |  |
| [35] | External Interlock |  |
| [40] | Out of ref range |  |
| [41] | Below reference, low |  |
| [42] | Above ref, high |  |
| [45] | Bus ctrl. |  |
| [46] | Bus ctrl, 1 if timeout |  |
| [47] | Bus ctrl, 0 if timeout |  |
| [55] | Pulse output |  |
| [60] | Comparator 0 |  |
| [61] | Comparator 1 |  |
| [62] | Comparator 2 |  |
| [63] | Comparator 3 |  |
| [64] | Comparator 4 |  |
| [65] | Comparator 5 |  |
| [70] | Logic rule 0 |  |
| [71] | Logic rule 1 |  |
| [72] | Logic rule 2 |  |
| [73] | Logic rule 3 |  |
| [74] | Logic rule 4 |  |
| [75] | Logic rule 5 |  |
| [80] | SL digital output A |  |
| [81] | SL digital output B |  |
| [82] | SL digital output C |  |
| [83] | SL digital output D |  |
| [84] | SL digital output E |  |
| [85] | SL digital output F |  |
| [90] | kWh counter pulse | Creates a pulse on the digital output every time the frequency converter uses 1 kWh . |
| [155] | Verifying Flow |  |
| [160] | No alarm |  |
| [161] | Running reverse |  |
| [164] | Local ref active, not OFF |  |
| [165] | Local ref active |  |
| [166] | Remote ref active |  |
| [167] | Start command activ |  |
| [168] | Hand mode |  |
| [169] | Auto mode |  |



| Option: |  | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | Select options to define the <br> function of the relays. <br> The selection of each mechanical <br> relay is realised in an array <br> parameter. |
| $[0]$ | No operation |  |
| $[1]$ | Control Ready |  |
| $[2]$ | Drive ready |  |
| $[3]$ | Drive rdy/rem ctrl |  |
| $[4]$ | Stand-by / no warning |  |
| $[5]$ | Running |  |
| $[6]$ | Running / no warning |  |
| $[8]$ | Run on ref/no warn |  |
| $[9]$ | Alarm |  |
| $[10]$ | Alarm or warning |  |
| $[11]$ | At torque limit |  |
| $[12]$ | Out of current range |  |
| $[13]$ | Below current, low |  |
| $[14]$ | Above current, high |  |
| $[15]$ | Out of speed range |  |
| $[16]$ | Below speed, low |  |
| $[17]$ | Above speed, high |  |
| $[18]$ | Out of feedb. range |  |
| $[19]$ | Below feedback, low |  |
| $[20]$ | Above feedback, high |  |
|  |  |  |


| 5-40 Function Relay |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Option: |  | Function: |
| [21] | Thermal warning |  |
| [25] | Reverse |  |
| [26] | Bus OK |  |
| [27] | Torque limit \& stop |  |
| [28] | Brake, no brake war |  |
| [29] | Brake ready, no fault |  |
| [30] | Brake fault (IGBT) |  |
| [33] | Safe stop active |  |
| [35] | External Interlock |  |
| [36] | Control word bit 11 |  |
| [37] | Control word bit 12 |  |
| [40] | Out of ref range |  |
| [41] | Below reference, low |  |
| [42] | Above ref, high |  |
| [45] | Bus ctrl. |  |
| [46] | Bus ctrl, 1 if timeout |  |
| [47] | Bus ctrl, 0 if timeout |  |
| [60] | Comparator 0 |  |
| [61] | Comparator 1 |  |
| [62] | Comparator 2 |  |
| [63] | Comparator 3 |  |
| [64] | Comparator 4 |  |
| [65] | Comparator 5 |  |
| [70] | Logic rule 0 |  |
| [71] | Logic rule 1 |  |
| [72] | Logic rule 2 |  |
| [73] | Logic rule 3 |  |
| [74] | Logic rule 4 |  |
| [75] | Logic rule 5 |  |
| [80] | SL digital output A |  |
| [81] | SL digital output B |  |
| [82] | SL digital output C |  |
| [83] | SL digital output D |  |
| [84] | SL digital output E |  |
| [85] | SL digital output F |  |
| [155] | Verifying Flow |  |
| [160] | No alarm |  |
| [161] | Running reverse |  |
| [164] | Local ref active, not OFF |  |
| [165] | Local ref active |  |
| [166] | Remote ref active |  |
| [167] | Start command activ |  |
| [168] | Hand mode |  |
| [169] | Auto mode |  |
| [180] | Clock Fault |  |
| [181] | Prev. Maintenance |  |
| [183] | Pre/Post Lube |  |
| [188] | AHF Capacitor Connect |  |
| [189] | External Fan Control |  |
| [190] | No-Flow |  |
| [191] | Dry Pump |  |
| [192] | End Of Curve |  |


| $5-40$ |  | Function Relay |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Option: |  |  |
| $[193]$ | Sleep Mode |  |
| $[194]$ | Broken Belt |  |
| $[195]$ | Bypass Valve Control |  |
| $[198]$ | Drive Bypass |  |
| $[199]$ | Pipe Filling |  |
| $[211]$ | Cascade Pump 1 |  |
| $[212]$ | Cascade Pump 2 |  |
| $[213]$ | Cascade Pump 3 |  |
| $[214]$ | Cascade Pump 4 |  |
| $[215]$ | Cascade Pump 5 |  |
| $[216]$ | Cascade Pump 6 |  |
| $[217]$ | Cascade Pump 7 |  |
| $[218]$ | Cascade Pump 8 |  |
| $[219]$ | Cascade Pump 9 |  |
| $[230]$ | Ext. Cascade Ctrl |  |

## 5-53 Term. 29 High Ref./Feedb. Value

## Range:

## Function:

100* [-999999.999 999999.999 ]

Enter the high reference value [RPM] for the motor shaft speed and the high feedback value, see also 5-58 Term. 33 High Ref./Feedb. Value.

### 6.2.6 6-** Analog In/Out

Parameter group for configuration of the analog input and output.

| 6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |
| 10 s | $[1-$  <br> $99 \mathrm{~s}]$ Enter the live zero time-out time period. Live zero <br> time-out time is active for analog inputs, that is, <br> terminal 53 or terminal 54, used as reference or <br> feedback sources. If the reference signal value <br> associated with the selected current input drops <br> below 50\% of the value set in <br> parameter 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage, <br> $6-12$ Terminal 53 Low Current, <br> parameter 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage or <br> 6-22 Terminal 54 Low Current for a time period <br> longer than the time set in parameter 6-00 Live <br> Zero Timeout Time, the function selected in <br> parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function is <br> activated. |


| 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Option: |  | Function: |
|  | Select the time-out function. The function set <br> in parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function is <br> activated if the input signal on terminal 53 or <br> 54 is below 50\% of the value in <br> parameter 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage, |  |



[^5]| 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| $0.07 \mathrm{~V}^{*}$ | $[0-\mathrm{par}$. <br> $6-11 \mathrm{~V}]$ | Enter the low-voltage value. This analog <br> input scaling value should correspond to <br> the low reference/feedback value set in <br> parameter 6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. <br> Value. |


| 6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| 10 V * | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline \text { [par. 6-10 } \\ -10 \mathrm{~V}] \end{array}$ | Enter the high-voltage value. This analog input scaling value should correspond to the high reference/feedback value set in parameter 6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value. |
| 6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value |  |  |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| 0* ${ }^{*}$ | [-999999.999 999999.999] | Enter the analog input scaling value that corresponds to the low voltage/low current set in parameter 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage and 6-12 Terminal 53 Low Current. |

6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value

| Range: | Function: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Size <br> related* | [-999999.999 - <br> $999999.999]$ | Enter the analog input scaling <br> value that corresponds to the high <br> voltage/high current value set in <br> parameter 6-11 Terminal 53 High <br> Voltage and 6-13 Terminal 53 High <br> Current. |


| 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| $0.07 \mathrm{~V} *$ | $[0-\mathrm{par}$. <br> $6-21 \mathrm{~V}]$ | Enter the low-voltage value. This analog <br> input scaling value should correspond to <br> the low reference/feedback value, set in <br> parameter 6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. <br> Value. |


| 6-21 |  | Terminal 54 High Voltage |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| $10 \mathrm{~V} *$ | $\left[\begin{array}{l}\text { par. } 6-20 \\ -10 \mathrm{~V}]\end{array}\right.$ | Enter the high-voltage value. This analog <br> input scaling value should correspond to the <br> high reference/feedback value set in <br> parameter 6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. <br> Value. |

## 6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value

## Range:

## Function:

0* [-999999.999 -
Enter the analog input scaling value that 999999.999 ] corresponds to the low voltage/low current value set in

## 6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value

| Range: | Function: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | parameter 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage <br> and 6-22 Terminal 54 Low Current. |


| 6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| $100^{*}$ | $[-999999.999-$ | Enter the analog input scaling value <br> that corresponds to the high voltage/ <br> high current value set in <br> parameter 6-21 Terminal 54 High Voltage <br> and 6-23 Terminal 54 High Current. |

## 6-50 Terminal 42 Output

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Select the function of Terminal 42 as an analog current output. A motor current of 20 mA corresponds to $I_{\text {max. }}$ |
| [0] | No operation |  |
| [100] * | Output freq. 0-100 | 0-100 Hz, (0-20 mA) |
| [101] | Reference Min-Max | Minimum reference - Maximum reference, (0-20 mA) |
| [102] | Feedback +-200\% | $-200 \%$ to $+200 \%$ of 20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb., (0-20 mA) |
| [103] | Motor cur. 0-Imax | 0 - Inverter Max. Current (16-37 Inv. <br> Max. Current), (0-20 mA) |
| [104] | Torque 0-Tlim | 0 - Torque limit (4-16 Torque Limit Motor Mode), (0-20 mA) |
| [105] | Torque 0-Tnom | 0 - Motor rated torque, (0-20 mA) |
| [106] | Power 0-Pnom | 0 - Motor rated power, (0-20 mA) |
| [107] | Speed 0-HighLim | 0 - Speed High Limit (parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] and 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]), (0-20 mA) |
| [108] | Torque +-160\% |  |
| [109] | Out frq 0-Fmax |  |
| [113] | Ext. Closed Loop 1 | 0-100\%, (0-20 mA) |
| [114] | Ext. Closed Loop 2 | 0-100\%, (0-20 mA) |
| [115] | Ext. Closed Loop 3 | 0-100\%, (0-20 mA) |
| [116] | Cascade Reference |  |
| [130] | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline \text { Out frq } 0-100 \\ 4-20 \mathrm{~mA} \end{array}$ | 0-100 Hz |
| [131] | Reference 4-20mA | Minimum Reference - Maximum Reference |
| [132] | Feedback 4-20mA | $-200 \%$ to $+200 \%$ of $20-14$ Maximum Reference/Feedb. |
| [133] | Motor cur. 4-20mA | 0 - Inverter Max. Current (16-37 Inv. <br> Max. Current) |


| 6-50 Terminal 42 Output |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Option: |  | Function: |
| [134] | Torq.0-lim 4-20 mA | 0 - Torque limit (4-16 Torque Limit Motor Mode) |
| [135] | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Torq.0-nom } \\ & \text { 4-20mA } \end{aligned}$ | 0 - Motor rated torque |
| [136] | Power 4-20mA | 0 - Motor rated power |
| [137] | Speed 4-20mA | 0 - Speed High Limit (4-13 and 4-14) |
| [138] | Torque 4-20mA |  |
| [139] | Bus ctrl. | 0-100\%, (0-20 mA) |
| [140] | Bus ctrl. 4-20 mA | 0-100\% |
| [141] | Bus ctrl t.o. | 0-100\%, (0-20 mA) |
| [142] | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { Bus ctrl t.o. } \\ & 4-20 \mathrm{~mA} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | 0-100\% |
| [143] | Ext. CL 1 4-20mA | 0-100\% |
| [144] | Ext. CL $24-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ | 0-100\% |
| [145] | Ext. CL 3 4-20mA | 0-100\% |
| [146] | Cascade Ref. $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ |  |
| [147] | Main act val $0-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ |  |
| [148] | Main act val $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ |  |
| [150] | Out frq 0-Fmax $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ |  |
| [254] | DC Link 0-20mA |  |
| [255] | DC Link 4-20mA |  |

## NOTICE

Values for setting the minimum reference are found in open loop parameter 3-02 Minimum Reference and for closed loop 20-13 Minimum Reference/Feedb. - values for maximum reference for open loop is found in 3-03 Maximum Reference and for closed loop 20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb.

| 6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| $0 \% \%^{*}$ | $[0-200$ | Scale for the minimum output (0 mA or 4 mA) <br> of the analog signal at terminal 42. <br> Set the value to be the percentage of the full <br> range of the variable selected in <br> parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output. |

## 6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale

| Range: Function: |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| 100 | $[0-$ |
| $\%^{*}$ | 200 |
| $\%]$ | Scale for the maximum output (20 mA) of the <br> analog signal at terminal 42. <br> Set the value to be the percentage of the full <br> range of the variable selected in <br> parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output. |



20 mA / desired maximum current $\times 100 \%$
i.e. $10 m A: \frac{20 m A}{10 m A} \times 100 \%=200 \%$

## Example 1:

Variable value=OUTPUT FREQUENCY, range $=0-100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ Range needed for output $=0-50 \mathrm{~Hz}$
Output signal 0 mA or 4 mA is needed at $0 \mathrm{~Hz}(0 \%$ of range) - set parameter 6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale to 0\%
Output signal 20 mA is needed at 50 Hz ( $50 \%$ of range) -
set parameter 6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale to 50\%


## Illustration 6.20 Example 1

## Example 2:

Variable=FEEDBACK, range $=-200 \%$ to $+200 \%$
Range needed for output=0-100\%
Output signal 0 mA or 4 mA is needed at $0 \%$ ( $50 \%$ of range) - set parameter 6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale to 50\%
Output signal 20 mA is needed at 100\% ( $75 \%$ of range) -
set parameter 6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale to $75 \%$


Illustration 6.21 Example 2

## Example 3:

Variable value=REFERENCE, range=Minimum ref maximum ref.
Range needed for output=Minimum ref (0\%) - Maximum ref (100\%), 0-10 mA
Output signal 0 mA or 4 mA is needed at minimum ref set parameter 6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale to 0\% Output signal 10 mA is needed at maximum ref ( $100 \%$ of range) - set parameter 6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale to 200\%
( $20 \mathrm{~mA} / 10 \mathrm{~mA} \times 100 \%=200 \%$ ).


## Illustration 6.22 Example 3

This parameter group is used for configuring the closed loop PID Controller, that controls the output frequency of the frequency converter.

## 20-12 Reference/Feedback Unit

Option: Function:

| $[0]$ | - |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $[1]$ | $\%$ |  |
| $[5]$ | PPM |  |
| $[10]$ | $1 / \mathrm{min}$ |  |
| $[11]$ | RPM |  |
| $[12]$ | Pulse/s |  |
| $[20]$ | $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{s}$ |  |

20-12 Reference/Feedback Unit

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [21] | I/min |  |
| [22] | I/h |  |
| [23] | $\mathrm{m}^{3} / \mathrm{s}$ |  |
| [24] | $\mathrm{m}^{3} / \mathrm{min}$ |  |
| [25] | $\mathrm{m}^{3} / \mathrm{h}$ |  |
| [30] | kg/s |  |
| [31] | kg/min |  |
| [32] | kg/h |  |
| [33] | $\mathrm{t} / \mathrm{min}$ |  |
| [34] | t/h |  |
| [40] | $\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{s}$ |  |
| [41] | $\mathrm{m} / \mathrm{min}$ |  |
| [45] | m |  |
| [60] | ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |
| [70] | mbar |  |
| [71] | bar |  |
| [72] | Pa |  |
| [73] | kPa |  |
| [74] | m WG |  |
| [75] | mm Hg |  |
| [80] | kW |  |
| [120] | GPM |  |
| [121] | $\mathrm{gal} / \mathrm{s}$ |  |
| [122] | $\mathrm{gal} / \mathrm{min}$ |  |
| [123] | $\mathrm{gal} / \mathrm{h}$ |  |
| [124] | CFM |  |
| [125] | $\mathrm{ft}^{3} / \mathrm{s}$ |  |
| [126] | $\mathrm{ft}^{3} / \mathrm{min}$ |  |
| [127] | $\mathrm{ft}^{3} / \mathrm{h}$ |  |
| [130] | $\mathrm{lb} / \mathrm{s}$ |  |
| [131] | $\mathrm{lb} / \mathrm{min}$ |  |
| [132] | $\mathrm{lb} / \mathrm{h}$ |  |
| [140] | $\mathrm{ft} / \mathrm{s}$ |  |
| [141] | $\mathrm{ft} / \mathrm{min}$ |  |
| [145] | ft |  |
| [160] | ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$ |  |
| [170] | psi |  |
| [171] | $\mathrm{lb} / \mathrm{in}^{2}$ |  |
| [172] | in WG |  |
| [173] | ft WG |  |
| [174] | in Hg |  |
| [180] | HP | This parameter determines the unit that is used for the setpoint reference and feedback that the PID controller uses for controlling the output frequency of the frequency converter. |


| 20-21 Setpoint 1 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $0$ <br> ProcessCtrIUnit* | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { [-999999.999- } \\ & \text { 999999.999 } \\ & \text { ProcessCtrlUnit] } \end{aligned}$ | Setpoint 1 is used in closed loop mode to enter a setpoint reference that is used by the frequency converter's PID controller. See the description of 20-20 Feedback Function. <br> NOTICE <br> The setpoint reference entered here is added to any other references that are enabled (see parameter group 3-1* References). |


| 20-81 PID Normal/ Inverse Control |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Option: | Function: |  |
| $[0]$ * | Normal | The frequency converter's output frequency <br> decreases when the feedback is greater than the <br> setpoint reference. This is common for pressure- <br> controlled supply fan and pump applications. |
| $[1]$ | Inverse | The frequency converter's output frequency <br> increases when the feedback is greater than the <br> setpoint reference. |


| 20-82 PID Start Speed [RPM] |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| Size <br> related* | [0- <br> par. 4-13 <br> RPM] | When the frequency converter is first started, it initially ramps-up to this output speed in open loop mode, following the active ramp up time. When the output speed programmed is reached, the frequency converter automatically switches to closed loop mode and the PID controller begins to function. This is useful in applications that require quick acceleration to a minimum speed at startup. <br> NOTICE <br> This parameter is only visible if 0-02 Motor Speed Unit is set to [0] RPM. |


| 20-93 PID Proportional Gain |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $2^{2 *}$ | $[0-10]$ | The proportional gain indicates the number of <br> times the error between the set point and the <br> feedback signal is to be applied. |

If (Error $x$ Gain) jumps with a value equal to what is set in 20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb., the PID controller tries to change the output speed equal to what is set in parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]/4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]. However, the output speed is limited by this setting.
The proportional band (error causing output to change from $0-100 \%$ ) can be calculated with the formula
$\left(\frac{1}{\text { Proportional Gain }}\right) \times($ Max Reference $)$

## NOTICE

Always set the desired value for 20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb. before setting the values for the PID controller in parameter group 20-9* PID Controller.

## 20-94 PID Integral Time

Range: Function:

| $8 \mathrm{~s}^{*}$ | $[0.01-$ <br> $10000 \mathrm{~s}]$ | The integrator accumulates a contribution to the <br> output from the PID controller as long as there <br> is a deviation between the reference/setpoint <br> and feedback signals. The contribution is propor- <br> tional to the size of the deviation. This ensures <br> that the deviation (error) approaches zero. <br> Quick response on any deviation is obtained <br> when the integral time is set to a low value. <br> Setting it too low, however, may cause the <br> control to become unstable. <br> The value set is the time needed for the <br> integrator to add the same contribution as the <br> proportional for a certain deviation. <br> If the value is set to 10,000, the controller acts as <br> a pure proportional controller with a P-band <br> based on the value set in parameter 20-93 PID <br> Proportional Gain. When no deviation is present, <br> the output from the proportional controller is 0. |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |

### 6.2.7 22-0* Miscellaneous

This group contains parameters used for monitoring water/ wastewater applications.

## 22-20 Low Power Auto Set-up

Start of auto set-up of power data for no-flow power tuning.
Option: Function:

| [0] * | Off |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| [1] | Enabled | An auto set-up sequence is activated, automat- <br> ically setting speed to approx. 50 and 85\% of <br> rated motor speed (parameter 4-13 Motor Speed <br> High Limit [RPM], 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]). <br> At those 2 speeds, the power consumption is <br> automatically measured and stored. <br> Before enabling auto set-up: |
| 1.Close valve(s) to create a no-flow <br> condition <br> 2.The frequency converter must be set for <br> open loop (parameter 1-00 Configuration <br> Mode). <br> Note that it is important also to set <br> 1-03 Torque Characteristics. |  |  |

## NOTICE

Auto set-up must be done when the system has reached normal operating temperature!

## NOTICE

It is important that the parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] or 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz] is set to the max. operational speed of the motor!
It is important to do the auto set-up before configuring the integrated PI controller as settings are reset when changing from closed to open loop in parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode.

## NOTICE

Carry out the tuning with the same settings in 1-03 Torque Characteristics, as for operation after the tuning.

| 22-21 Low Power Detection |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Option: |  | Function: |
| $[0] *$ | Disabled |  |
| $[1]$ | Enabled | The low-power detection commissioning must be <br> carried out to set the parameters in parameter <br> group 22-3* No-Flow Power Tuning for proper <br> operation. |
| 22-22 Low Speed Detection |  |  |$|$| Option: | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |


| 22-23 No-Flow Function |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\begin{array}{l}\text { Common actions for low-power detection and low-speed } \\ \text { detection (Individual selections not possible). } \\ \text { Option: }\end{array}$ |  |  |
| [0] * | Off | Function: |$]$| [1] | Sleep Mode | The frequency converter enters sleep mode <br> and stops when a no-flow condition is <br> detected. See parameter group 22-4* Sleep <br> Mode for programming options for sleep <br> mode. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| [2] | Warning | The frequency converter continues to run, <br> but activates a no-flow warning [W92]. A <br> digital output or a serial communication bus <br> can communicate a warning to other <br> equipment. |
| [3] | Trip | The frequency converter stops running and <br> activates a no-flow alarm [A 92]. A frequency <br> converter digital output or a serial <br> communication bus can communicate an <br> alarm to other equipment. |
| [4] | Stop and Trip |  |

## NOTICE

Do not set 14-20 Reset Mode, to [13] Infinite auto reset, when parameter 22-23 No-Flow Function is set to [3] Alarm. Doing so, causes the frequency converter to continuously cycle between running and stopping when a no-flow condition is detected.

## NOTICE

Disable the bypass's automatic bypass funcion

- if the frequency converter is equipped with a constant speed bypass with an automatic bypass function starting the bypass if the frequency converter experiences a persistent alarm condition, and
- if [3] Alarm is selected as the no-flow function.

| 22-24 |  | No-Flow Delay |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $10 \mathrm{~s}^{*}$ | $[1-600 \mathrm{~s}]$ | Set the time that low power/low speed must <br> stay detected to activate signal for actions. If <br> detection disappears before the timer runs <br> out, the timer is reset. |


| 22-26 Dry Pump Function <br> Select desired action for dry pump operation. <br> Option: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| [0] * Off | Function: |

## NOTICE

Low Power Detection must be enabled
(parameter 22-21 Low Power Detection) and commissioned (using either parameter group 22-3* No-flow
Power Tuning No Flow Power Tuning, or parameter 22-20 Low Power Auto Set-up) to use dry-pump detection.

## NOTICE

Do not set 14-20 Reset Mode, to [13] Infinite auto reset, when parameter 22-26 Dry Pump Function is set to [2] Alarm. Doing so causes the frequency converter to continuously cycle between running and stopping when a dry pump condition is detected.

## NOTICE

If the frequency converter is equipped with a constant speed bypass with an automatic bypass function that starts the bypass if the frequency converter experiences a persistent alarm condition, be sure to disable the bypass's automatic bypass function, if [2] Alarm or [3] Man. Reset Alarm is selected as the dry-pump function.

| 22-27 Dry Pump Delay |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $10 \mathrm{~s}^{*}$ | $[0-600$ | Defines for how long the dry-pump condition <br> must be active before activating warning or <br> alarm. <br> The frequency converter waits for the no-flow <br> delay time (parameter 22-24 No-Flow Delay) to |


| 22-27 Dry Pump Delay |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  |  |
| expire before the timer for the dry pump delay <br> starts. |  |  |
| 22-30 No-Flow Power |  |  |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| 0 kW* | $[0-0 \mathrm{~kW}]$ | Readout of calculated no-flow power at <br> actual speed. If power drops to the display <br> value, the frequency converter considers the <br> condition as a no-flow situation. |

## 22-31 Power Correction Factor

| Range: |  | Function: |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| 100 | $[1-$ | Make corrections to the calculated power at <br> parameter 22-30 No-Flow Power. <br> If no flow is detected, when it should not be <br> detected, decrease the setting. However, if no <br> flow is not detected, when it should be <br> detected, increase the setting to above 100\%. |

## 22-32 Low Speed [RPM]

| Range: |  | Function: |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-$ par. <br> $22-36 \mathrm{RPM}]$ | To be used if $0-02$ Motor Speed Unit has <br> been set for RPM (parameter not visible <br> if Hz selected). <br> Set used speed for the 50\% level. <br> This function is used for storing values <br> needed to tune no-flow detection. |  |


| 22-33 Low Speed [Hz] |  |  |
| :--- | ---: | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-$ par. <br> $22-37 \mathrm{~Hz}]$ | To be used if $0-02$ Motor Speed Unit has <br> been set for Hz (parameter not visible <br> if RPM selected). <br> Set used speed for the $50 \%$ level. <br> The function is used for storing values <br> needed to tune no-flow detection. |


| 22-34 Low Speed Power [kW] |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-$ <br> $5.50 \mathrm{~kW}]$ | To be used if 0-03 Regional Settings has <br> been set for International (parameter not <br> visible if North America selected). <br> Set power consumption at 50\% speed <br> level. <br> This function is used for storing values <br> needed to tune no-flow detection. |


| 22-35 Low Speed Power [HP] |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-50 \mathrm{hp}]$ | To be used if 0-03 Regional Settings has <br> been set for North America (parameter <br> not visible if International selected). <br> Set power consumption at 50\% speed <br> level. <br> This function is used for storing values <br> needed to tune no-flow detection. |


| 22-36 High Speed [RPM] |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-$ par. <br> $4-13$ RPM] | To be used if $0-02$ Motor Speed Unit has <br> been set for RPM (parameter not visible <br> if Hz selected). <br> Set used speed for the $85 \%$ level. <br> The function is used for storing values <br> needed to tune no-flow detection. |


| 22-37 High Speed [Hz] |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-$ par. <br> $4-14 \mathrm{~Hz}]$ | To be used if $0-02$ Motor Speed Unit has <br> been set for Hz (parameter not visible if <br> RPM selected). <br> Set used speed for the $85 \%$ level. <br> The function is used for storing values <br> needed to tune no-flow detection. |


| 22-38 High Speed Power [kW] |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-50 \mathrm{~kW}]$To be used if 0 0-03 Regional Settings has <br> been set for International (parameter not <br> visible if North America selected). <br> Set power consumption at 85\% speed <br> level. <br> This function is used for storing values <br> needed to tune no-flow detection. |


| 22-39 High Speed Power [HP] |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | 7.50 hp] | To be used if $0-03$ Regional Settings has <br> been set for North America (parameter <br> not visible if International selected). <br> Set power consumption at 85\% speed <br> level. <br> This function is used for storing values <br> needed to tune no-flow detection. |


| 22-40 |  | Minimum Run Time |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $60 \mathrm{~s}^{*}$ | $[0-600 \mathrm{~s}]$ | Set the desired minimum running time for <br> the motor after a start command (digital <br> input or bus) before entering sleep mode. |


| 22-41 |  | Minimum Sleep Time |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $30 \mathrm{~s}^{*}$ | $[0-600 \mathrm{~s}]$ | Set the desired minimum time for staying in <br> sleep mode. This setting overrides any wake- <br> up conditions. |


| 22-42 Wake-up Speed [RPM] |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | [0-8 <br> par. 4-13 <br> RPM] | To be used if 0-02 Motor Speed Unit has <br> been set for RPM (parameter not visible if <br> Hz selected). Only to be used if <br> parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode is set for <br> open loop and an external controller <br> applies speed reference. <br> Set the reference speed at which the sleep <br> mode should be cancelled. |

## 22-43 Wake-up Speed [Hz]

| Range: |  | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-$ <br> par. <br> $4-14$ <br> $\mathrm{~Hz}]$ | To be used if $0-02$ Motor Speed Unit, has <br> been set for Hz (parameter not visible if RPM <br> selected). Only to be used if <br> parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode, is set for <br> [0] Open Loop and speed reference is applied <br> by an external controller controlling the <br> pressure. <br> Set the reference speed at which the sleep <br> mode should be cancelled. |

## 22-44 Wake-up Ref./FB Difference

| Range: |  | Function: |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| 10 | $[0-$ | Only to be used if parameter 1-00 Configuration |
| $\%^{*}$ | $100 \%]$ | Mode, is set for [3] Closed Loop and the <br> integrated PI controller is used for controlling the <br> pressure. <br> Set the pressure drop allowed in percentage of <br> set point for the pressure (Pset) before cancelling <br> the sleep mode. |

## NOT/CE

If used in applications where the integrated PI controller is set for inverse control in 20-71 PID Performance, the value set in 22-44 Wake-up Ref./FB Difference is automatically added.

| 22-45 Setpoint Boost |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| 0 | [-100 | Only to be used if parameter 1-00 Configuration |
| \%* | $\begin{aligned} & -100 \\ & \%] \end{aligned}$ | Mode, is set for [3] Closed Loop and the integrated PI controller is used. In systems with e.g. constant pressure control, it is advantageous to increase the system pressure before the motor is stopped. This extends the time in which the motor is stopped and helps to avoid frequent start/stop. Set the desired overpressure/temperature in percentage of setpoint for the pressure ( $\mathrm{P}_{\text {set }}$ )/ temperature before entering the sleep mode. If setting for $5 \%$, the boost pressure is $\mathrm{P}_{\text {set }}{ }^{*} 1.05$. The negative values can be used for e.g. cooling tower control where a negative change is needed. |


| 22-46 Maximum Boost Time |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| 60 | $[0-$ | Only to be used if parameter 1-00 Configuration <br> $s^{*}$ |
| $600 \mathrm{~s}]$ | Mode is set for closed loop and the integrated PI <br> controller is used for controlling the pressure. <br> Set the maximum time for which boost mode is <br> allowed. If the set time is exceeded, sleep mode is <br> entered, not waiting for the set boost pressure to <br> be reached. |  |


| 22-50 End of Curve Function |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Option: | Function: |  |
| [0] * | Off | End-of-curve monitoring not active. |
| [1] | Warning | The frequency converter continues to run, but <br> activates an end-of-curve warning [W94]. A <br> frequency converter digital output or a serial <br> communication bus can communicate a <br> warning to other equipment. |
| [2] | Trip | The frequency converter stops running and <br> activates an end-of-curve alarm [A 94]. A <br> frequency converter digital output or a serial <br> communication bus can communicate an <br> alarm to other equipment. |
| [3] | Manual <br> Reset Trip | The frequency converter stops running and <br> activates an end-of-curve alarm [A 94]. A <br> frequency converter digital output or a serial <br> communication bus can communicate an <br> alarm to other equipment. |
| [4] | Stop and <br> Trip | ( |

## NOTICE

Automatic restart resets the alarm and restarts the system.

## NOTICE

Do not set 14-20 Reset Mode, to [13] Infinite auto reset, when parameter 22-50 End of Curve Function is set to [2] Alarm. Doing so causes the frequency converter to continuously cycle between running and stopping when an end-of-curve condition is detected.

## NOTICE

If the frequency converter is equipped with a constant speed bypass with an automatic bypass function that starts the bypass if the frequency converter experiences a persistent alarm condition, be sure to disable the bypass's automatic bypass function, if [2] Alarm or [3] Man. Reset Alarm is selected as the end-of-curve function.

| 22-51 End of Curve Delay |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| $10 \mathrm{~s}^{*}$ | $[0-$ | When an end-of-curve condition is detected, a <br> timer is activated. When the time set in this <br> parameter expires, and the end-of-curve <br> condition has been steady in the entire period, <br> the function set in parameter 22-50 End of Curve |
| Function is activated. If the condition disappears <br> before the timer expires, the timer is reset. |  |  |

## 22-80 Flow Compensation

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $[0] *$ | Disabled | Setpoint compensation not active. |
| $[1]$ | Enabled | Setpoint compensation is active. Enabling this <br> parameter allows the flow-compensated setpoint <br> operation. |

## 22-81 Square-linear Curve Approximation

| Range: |  | Function: |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| $100 \%^{*}$ | $[0-100 \%]$ | Example 1: <br> Adjustment of this parameter allows the <br> shape of the control curve to be adjusted. <br> $0=$ Linear <br> $100 \%=$ Ideal shape (theoretical). |  |

NOTICE
Not visible when running in cascade.


Illustration 6.23 Square-linear Curve Approximation

## 22-82 Work Point Calculation

## Option:

## Function:



Illustration 6.24 Speed at System Design Working Point is Known

From the data sheet showing characteristics for the specific equipment at different speeds, simply reading across from the HDESIGN point and the Qdesign point allows finding point A, which is the system design working point. The pump characteristics at this point should be identified and the associated speed programmed. Closing the valves and adjusting the speed until $\mathrm{H}_{\text {min }}$ has been achieved allows the speed at the no-flow point to be identified.
Adjustment of parameter 22-81 Square-linear Curve Approximation then allows the shape of the control curve to be adjusted infinitely.

## Example 2:

Speed at system design working point is not known: Where the speed at system design working point is unknown, another reference point on the control curve needs to be determined by means of the data sheet. By looking at the curve for the rated speed and plotting the design pressure (HDEsign, Point C ) the flow at that pressure, Qrated, can be determined. Similarly, by plotting the design flow (Qdesign, Point D). The pressure $\mathrm{H}_{\text {design }}$ at that flow can be determined. Knowing these 2 points on the pump curve, along

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | with $\mathrm{H}_{\text {min }}$ as described above, allows the frequency converter to calculate the reference point $B$ and thus to plot the control curve which also includes the system design working point $A$. <br> Illustration 6.25 Speed at System Design Working Point is not Known |
| [0] | Disabled | Work point calculation not active. To be used if speed at design point is known. |
| [1] | Enabled | Work point calculation is active. Enabling this parameter allows the calculation of the unknown system design working point at $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ speed, from the input data set in parameter 22-83 Speed at No-Flow [RPM] parameter 22-84 Speed at No-Flow [Hz], parameter 22-87 Pressure at No-Flow Speed, parameter 22-88 Pressure at Rated Speed, 22-89 Flow at Design Point and parameter 22-90 Flow at Rated Speed. |

## 22-84 Speed at No-Flow [Hz]

| Range: |  | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-$ <br> par. <br> $22-86$ <br> $\mathrm{~Hz}]$ | Resolution 0.033 Hz. <br> Enter the motor speed in Hz at which flow <br> has effectively stopped and minimum <br> pressure HMIN is achieved. Alternatively, the <br> speed in RPM can be entered in <br> parameter 22-83 Speed at No-Flow [RPM]. If it <br> has been decided to use Hz in 0-02 Motor <br> Speed Unit, parameter 22-86 Speed at Design <br> Point [Hz] should also be used. Closing the <br> valves and reducing the speed until <br> minimum pressure HMIN is achieved <br> determines this value. |


| 22-85 Speed at Design Point [RPM] |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | [0- <br> RPM] | Resolution 1 RPM. <br> Only visible when parameter 22-82 Work <br> Point Calculation is set to [0] Disabled. Enter <br> the motor speed in RPM at which the <br> System design working point is achieved. <br> Alternatively, the speed in Hz can be <br> entered in parameter 22-86 Speed at Design <br> Point [Hz]. If it has been decided to use <br> RPM in 0-02 Motor Speed Unit then <br> parameter 22-83 Speed at No-Flow [RPM] <br> should also be used. |


| 22-86 Speed at Design Point [Hz] |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| Size <br> related* | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { [0.0- } \\ & \text { par. } \\ & 4-19 \\ & \text { Hz] } \end{aligned}$ | Resolution 0.033 Hz . <br> Only visible when parameter 22-82 Work Point Calculation is set to [0] Disabled. Enter the motor speed in Hz at which the system design working point is achieved. Alternatively, the speed in RPM can be entered in parameter 22-85 Speed at Design Point [RPM]. If it has been decided to use Hz in 0-02 Motor Speed Unit, parameter 22-83 Speed at No-Flow [RPM] should also be used. |


| 22-87 Pressure at No-Flow Speed |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $0^{*}$ | $[0-$ par. 22-88 ] | Enter the pressure Hmin corresponding to <br> speed at no-flow in reference/feedback <br> units. |

Also see parameter 22-82 Work Point Calculation point D.

## 22-88 Pressure at Rated Speed

| Range: | Function: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 999999.999* | [ par. 22-87 - <br> 999999.999 ] | Enter the value corresponding <br> to the pressure at rated speed, <br> in reference/feedback units. This <br> value can be defined using the <br> pump datasheet. |


| 22-83 | Speed at No-Flow [RPM] |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | Function: |  |
| Size <br> related* | $[0-$ <br> par. <br> $22-85$ <br> RPM] | Resolution 1 RPM. <br> The speed of the motor at which flow is <br> zero and minimum pressure HMin is achieved <br> should be entered here in RPM. Alterna- <br> tively, the speed in Hz can be entered in <br> parameter 22-84 Speed at No-Flow [Hz]. If it <br> has been decided to use RPM in 0-02 Motor <br> Speed Unit then parameter 22-85 Speed at <br> Design Point [RPM] should also be used. |


| 22-83 |  | Speed at No-Flow [RPM] |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
|  | Closing the valves and reducing the speed <br> until minimum pressure $H_{\text {Min }}$ is achieved <br> determines this value. |  |

Also see parameter 22-82 Work Point Calculation point C.

| 22-90 Flow at Rated Speed |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $0^{*}$ | $[0-999999.999]$ | Enter the value corresponding to flow at <br> rated speed. This value can be defined <br> using the pump datasheet. |

### 6.2.8 23-0* Timed Actions

Use Timed Actions for actions needing to be performed on a daily or weekly basis, e.g. different references for working hours/non-working hours. Up to 10 timed actions can be programmed in the frequency converter. The timed action number is selected from the list when entering parameter group 23-0* Timed Actions from the LCP.
Parameter 23-00 ON Time - parameter 23-04 Occurrence then refer to the selected timed action number. Each timed action is divided into an ON time and an OFF time, in which 2 different actions may be performed.

Display lines 2 and 3 in the LCP show the status for timed actions mode (0-23 Display Line 2 Large and 0-24 Display Line 3 Large, setting [1643] Timed Actions Status).

## NOTICE

A change in mode via the digital inputs can only take place if 23-08 Timed Actions Mode is set for [0] Times Actions Auto.
If commands are applied simultaneously to the digital inputs for Constant OFF and Constant ON, the timed actions mode changes to timed actions auto and the 2 commands are disregarded.
If $0-70$ Date and Time is not set or the frequency converter is set to HAND or OFF mode (e.g. via the LCP), the timed actions mode is changed to Timed Actions Disabled.
The timed actions have a higher priority than the same actions/commands activated by the digital inputs or the Smart Logic Controller.

The actions programmed in timed actions are merged with corresponding actions from digital inputs, control word via bus and Smart Logic Controller, according to merge rules set up in parameter group 8-5* Digital/Bus.

## NOTICE

The clock (parameter group 0-7* Clock Settings) must be correctly programmed for timed actions to function correctly.

## NOTICE

When mounting an analog I/O MCB 109 option card, a battery back-up of the date and time is included.

## NOTICE

The PC-based configuration tool MCT 10 Set-up Software comprises a special guide for easy programming of timed actions.


| $23-01$ |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Arra |  | [10] |
| Option: |  |  |
| [19] | Sunction: |  |
| $[22]$ | Run |  |
| $[23]$ | Run reverse |  |
| $[24]$ | Stop |  |
| $[26]$ | DC Brake |  |
| $[27]$ | Coast |  |
| $[28]$ | Freeze output |  |
| $[29]$ | Start timer 0 |  |
| $[30]$ | Start timer 1 |  |
| $[31]$ | Start timer 2 |  |
| $[32]$ | Set digital out A low |  |
| $[33]$ | Set digital out B low |  |
| $[34]$ | Set digital out C low |  |
| $[35]$ | Set digital out D low |  |
| $[36]$ | Set digital out E low |  |
| $[37]$ | Set digital out F low |  |
| $[38]$ | Set digital out A high |  |
| $[39]$ | Set digital out B high |  |
| $[40]$ | Set digital out C high |  |
| $[41]$ | Set digital out D high |  |
| $[42]$ | Set digital out E high |  |
| $[43]$ | Set digital out F high |  |
| $[60]$ | Reset Counter A |  |
| $[61]$ | Reset Counter B |  |
| $[70]$ | Start Timer 3 |  |
| $[71]$ | Start Timer 4 |  |
| $[72]$ | Start Timer 5 |  |
| $[73]$ | Start Timer 6 |  |
| $[74]$ | Start Timer 7 |  |
| $[80]$ | Sleep Mode |  |
| $[81]$ | Derag |  |

## NOTICE

For choices [32] - [43], see also parameter group 5-3* Digital Outputs and 5-4* Relays.

| 23-02 OFF Time |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Array [10] |  |  |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| Size related* | [0-0] | Sets the OFF time for the timed action. <br> NOTICE <br> The frequency converter has no back-up of the clock function and the set date/time is reset to default (2000-01-01 00:00) after a power down unless a Real Time Clock module with back-up is installed. In 0-79 Clock Fault it is possible to program for a warning in case clock has not been set properly, e.g. after a power down. |

## 23-03 OFF Action

Array [10]

| Option: |  | Function: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
|  |  | Select the action during OFF Time. <br> See 13-52 SL Controller Action for <br> descriptions of the options. |  |
| $[0]$ * | Disabled |  |  |
| $[1]$ | No action |  |  |
| $[2]$ | Select set-up 1 |  |  |
| $[3]$ | Select set-up 2 |  |  |
| $[4]$ | Select set-up 3 |  |  |
| $[5]$ | Select set-up 4 |  |  |
| $[10]$ | Select preset ref 0 |  |  |
| $[11]$ | Select preset ref 1 |  |  |
| $[12]$ | Select preset ref 2 |  |  |
| $[13]$ | Select preset ref 3 |  |  |
| $[14]$ | Select preset ref 4 |  |  |
| $[15]$ | Select preset ref 5 |  |  |
| $[16]$ | Select preset ref 6 |  |  |
| $[17]$ | Select preset ref 7 |  |  |
| $[18]$ | Select ramp 1 |  |  |
| $[19]$ | Select ramp 2 |  |  |
| $[22]$ | Run |  |  |
| $[23]$ | Run reverse |  |  |
| $[24]$ | Stop |  |  |
| $[26]$ | DC Brake |  |  |
| $[27]$ | Coast |  |  |
| $[28]$ | Freeze output |  |  |
| $[29]$ | Start timer 0 |  |  |
| $[30]$ | Start timer 1 |  |  |
| $[31]$ | Start timer 2 |  |  |
| $[32]$ | Set digital out A low |  |  |
| $[33]$ | Set digital out B low |  |  |
| $[34]$ | Set digital out C low |  |  |
| $[35]$ | Set digital out D low |  |  |
| $[36]$ | Set digital out E low |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |


| 23-03 OFF Action <br> Array <br> Option <br> Option: |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $[37]$ | Set digital out F low |  |
| $[38]$ | Set digital out A high |  |
| $[39]$ | Set digital out B high |  |
| $[40]$ | Set digital out C high |  |
| $[41]$ | Set digital out D high |  |
| $[42]$ | Set digital out E high |  |
| $[43]$ | Set digital out F high |  |
| $[60]$ | Reset Counter A |  |
| $[61]$ | Reset Counter B |  |
| $[70]$ | Start Timer 3 |  |
| $[71]$ | Start Timer 4 |  |
| $[72]$ | Start Timer 5 |  |
| $[73]$ | Start Timer 6 |  |
| $[74]$ | Start Timer 7 |  |
| $[80]$ | Sleep Mode |  |
| $[81]$ | Derag |  |


| 23-04 Occurrence  <br>   <br> Array [10]  <br> Option:  |  | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

The group contains parameters used for monitoring water/ wastewater applications.

## 29-00 Pipe Fill Enable

| Option: |  | Function: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $[0] *$ | Disabled | Select Enabled to fill pipes at a user specified <br> rate. |
| $[1]$ | Enabled | Select Enabled to fill pipes at a user specified <br> rate. |

## 29-01 Pipe Fill Speed [RPM]

| Range: |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Size <br> related* | [ par. <br> $4-11-$ <br> par. 4-13 <br> RPM] | is <br> i |

Function:
Set the filling speed for filling horizontal pipe systems. The speed can be selected in Hz or RPM depending on the choices
RPM]

| 29-01 Pipe Fill Speed [RPM] |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range: |  | Function: |
|  |  | made in parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]/parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] or in 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]/4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]. |
| 29-02 Pipe Fill Speed [Hz] |  |  |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| Size related* | $$ | Set the filling speed for filling horizontal pipe systems. The speed can be selected in Hz or RPM depending on the choices made in parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]/parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] or in 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]/4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [ Hz ]. |


| 29-03 Pipe Fill Time |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $0 s^{*}$ | $[0-3600 \mathrm{~s}]$ | Set the specified time for pipe filling of <br> horizontal pipe systems. |


| 29-04 Pipe Fill Rate | Function: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Range: | [0.001- <br> ProcessCtrIUnit* <br> 999999.999 <br> ProcessCtrlUnit] | Specifies the filling rate in <br> units/second using the PI <br> controller. Filling rate units <br> are feedback units/second. <br> This function is used for <br> filling-up vertical pipe <br> systems, but is active when <br> the filling-time has expired, <br> no matter what, until the <br> pipe fill-set-point set in <br> 29-05 Filled Setpoint is <br> reached. |


| 29-05 Filled Setpoint |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range: |  | Function: |
| $0$ <br> ProcessCtrIUnit* | [-999999.999 - 999999.999 ProcessCtrlUnit] | Specifies the filled setpoint at which the pipe fill function is disabled and the PID controller takes control. This function can be used both for horizontal and vertical pipe systems. |

### 6.3 Parameter Options

### 6.3.1 Default Settings

## Changes during operation

"TRUE" means that the parameter can be changed while the frequency converter is in operation and "FALSE" means that the frequency converter must be stopped before a change can be made.

## 4-Set-up

'All set-up': the parameter can be set individually in each of the 4 set-ups, i. e. one single parameter can have 4 different data values.
' 1 set-up': data value is the same in all set-ups.
SR
Size related
N/A
No default value available.

## Conversion index

This number refers to a conversion figure used when writing or reading by means of a frequency converter.

| Conv. <br> index | 100 | 75 | 74 | 70 | 67 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | -1 | -2 | -3 | -4 | -5 | -6 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Conv. <br> factor | 1 | 3600000 | 360 | 60 | $1 / 60$ | 100000 <br> 0 | 10000 <br> 0 | 1000 <br> 0 | 1000 | 100 | 10 | 1 | 0.1 | 0.01 | 0.001 | 0.000 | 0.00001 | 0.00000 |
| 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 6.9

| Data type | Description | Type |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2 | Integer 8 | Int8 |
| 3 | Integer 16 | Int16 |
| 4 | Integer 32 | Int32 |
| 5 | Unsigned 8 | Uint8 |
| 6 | Unsigned 16 | Uint16 |
| 7 | Unsigned 32 | Uint32 |
| 9 | Visible String | VisStr |
| 33 | Normalized value 2 bytes | N2 |
| 35 | Bit sequence of 16 boolean variables | V2 |
| 54 | Time difference w/o date | TimD |

Table 6.10



$\begin{array}{ll}\text { 4-** } & \text { Limits / Warnings } \\ 4-1^{*} & \text { Motor Limits }\end{array}$| 4-** | Limits / Warnings |
| :--- | :--- |
| $4-$ 1 $^{*}$ | Motor Limits |
| $4-10$ | Motor Speed Direction |
| $4-11$ | Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] |
| $4-12$ | Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz] |
| $4-13$ | Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] |
| $4-14$ | Motor Speed High Limit [Hz] |
| $4-16$ | Torque Limit Motor Mode |
| $4-17$ | Torque Limit Generator Mode |
| $4-18$ | Current Limit |
| $4-19$ | Max Output Frequency |
| $4-5^{*}$ | Adj. Warnings |
| $4-50$ | Warning Current Low |
| $4-51$ | Warning Current High |
| $4-52$ | Warning Speed Low |
| $4-53$ | Warning Speed High |
| $4-54$ | Warning Reference Low |
| $4-55$ | Warning Reference High |
| $4-56$ | Warning Feedback Low |
| $4-57$ | Warning Feedback High |
| $4-58$ | Missing Motor Phase Function |
| $4-6^{*}$ | Speed Bypass |
| $4-60$ | Bypass Speed From [RPM] |
| $4-61$ | Bypass Speed From [Hz] |
| $4-62$ | Bypass Speed To [RPM] |
| $4-63$ | Bypass Speed To [Hz] |
| $4-64$ | Semi-Auto Bypass Set-up |
| 5 -** | Diaital In/Out |


 $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-** } & \text { Digital In/Out } \\ \text { 5-0* } & \text { Digital I/O mode }\end{array}$

 $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { 5-1* } & \text { Digital Inputs } \\ \text { 5-10 } & \text { Terminal 18 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-11 } & \text { Terminal 19 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-12 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-13 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-14 } & \text { Terminal 32 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-15 } & \text { Terminal 33 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-16 } & \text { Terminal X30/2 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-17 } & \text { Terminal X30/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-18 } & \text { Terminal X30/4 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-19 } & \text { Terminal 37 Digital Inut } \\ \text { 5-20 } & \text { Terminal X46/1 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-21 } & \text { Terminal X46/3 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-22 } & \text { Terminal X46/5 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-23 } & \text { Terminal X46/7 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-24 } & \text { Terminal X46/9 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-25 } & \text { Terminal X46/11 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-26 } & \text { Terminal X46/13 Digital Input } \\ \text { 5-3* } & \text { Digital Outputs } \\ \text { 5-30 } & \text { Terminal 27 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-31 } & \text { Terminal 29 Digital Output } \\ \text { 5-32 } & \text { Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-33 } & \text { Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) } \\ \text { 5-4* } & \text { Relays } \\ \text { 5-40 } & \text { Function Relay } \\ \text { 5-41 } & \text { On Delay, Relay } \\ \text { 5-42 } & \text { Off Delay, Relay } \\ \end{array}$ | 5-00 | Digital I/O Mode |
| :--- | :--- |
| 5-01 | Terminal 27 Mode |
| 5-02 | Terminal 29 Mode |
| 5-1* | Digital Inputs |
| 5-10 | Terminal 18 Digital Input |
| 5-11 | Terminal 19 Digital Input |
| 5-12 | Terminal 27 Digital Input |
| 5-13 | Terminal 29 Digital Input |
| 5-14 | Terminal 32 Digital Input |
| 5-15 | Terminal 33 Digital Input |
| 5-16 | Terminal X30/2 Digital Input |
| 5-17 | Terminal X30/3 Digital Input |
| 5-18 | Terminal X30/4 Digital Input |
| 5-19 | Terminal 37 Digital Input |
| 5-20 | Terminal X46/1 Digital Input |
| 5-21 | Terminal X46/3 Digital Input |
| 5-22 | Terminal X46/5 Digital Input |
| 5-23 | Terminal X46/7 Digital Input |
| 5-24 | Terminal X46/9 Digital Input |
| 5-25 | Terminal X46/11 Digital Input |
| 5-26 | Terminal X46/13 Digital Input |
| 5-3* | Digital Outputs |
| 5-30 | Terminal 27 Digital Output |
| 5-31 | Terminal 29 Digital Output |
| 5-32 | Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101) |
| 5-33 | Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101) |
| 5-4* | Relays |
| 5-40 | Function Relay |
| 5-41 | On Delay, Relay |
| 5-42 | Off Delay, Relay | 1-82 Min Speed for Function at Stop $[\mathrm{Hz}]$ $1-82$

$1-86$
$1-87$
$1-9^{*}$
$1-90$
$1-91$
$1-93$
$2-* *$
$2-0^{*}$
$2-00$
$2-01$
$2-02$
$2-03$
$2-04$
$2-06$
$2-07$
$2-1^{*}$
$2-10$
$2-11$
$2-12$
$2-13$
$2-15$
$2-16$
$2-17$
$3-* *$
$3-0^{*}$
$3-02$
$3-03$
$3-04$
$3-1 *$
$3-10$
$3-11$
$3-13$
$3-14$
$3-15$
$3-16$
$3-17$
$3-19$
$3-4^{*}$
$3-41$
$3-42$
$3-5 *$
$3-51$
$3-52$
$3-8^{*}$
$3-80$
$3-81$
$3-84$
$3-85$
$3-86$
$3-87$
$3-88$
$3-9 *$
$3-90$
$3-91$
$3-92$
$3-93$
$3-94$
$3-95$ ther Ramps gamp Time
uick Stop Ramp Time
nitial Ramp Time
Ceck Valve Ramp Time
Ceck Valve Ramp End Speed [RPM]
Ceck Valve Ramp End Speed [HZ]
nal Ramp Time Final Ramp Time Digital Pot.Meter
Step Size
Ramp Time wer Restore
 Ramp Delay
 Motor Thermal Protection
Motor External Fan

Brakes
DC-Brake
DC Hold/Preheat CurrentDC Hold/Preheat Current
DC Brake Current
DC Braking Time DC Brake Cut In Speed [RPM]
DC Brake Cut In Speed [Hz] Parking Current
 Brake Function
Brake Resistor (ohm) Brake Power Limit (kW) Brake Power Monitoring AC brake Max. Current

 in in in in in
Reference Site
Preset Relative Reference
Reference 1 Source
Reference 2 Source
Reference 3 Source
Jog Speed [RPM]
Ramp 1
Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time
Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time
Ramp 2
Ramp 2 Ramp Up Time
Ramp 2 Ramp Down Time
Other Ramps
Jog Ramp Time
Quick Stop Ramp Time
Initial Ramp Time
Check Valve Ramp Time
Check Valve Ramp End Speed [RPM]Check Valve Ramp End Speed [HZ]Maximum Reference
Reference Function
References
Preset Reference
Jog Speed [Hz]
Reference Site
Preset Relative Refere
Reference 1 Source
Reference 2 Source
Reference 3 Source

Jog Speed [RPM] \begin{tabular}{l}
Maximum Reference <br>
Reference Function <br>
References <br>
Preset Reference <br>
Jog Speed [Hz] <br>
Reference Site <br>
Preset Relative Reference <br>
Reference 1 Source <br>
Reference 2 Source <br>
Reference 3 Source <br>
Jog Speed [RPM] <br>
Ramp 1 <br>
Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time <br>
Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time <br>
Ramp 2 <br>
Ramp 2 Ramp Up Time <br>
Ramp 2 Ramp Down Time <br>
\hline Omp

 

Maximum Reference <br>
Reference Function <br>
References <br>
Preset Reference <br>
Jog Speed [Hz] <br>
Reference Site <br>
Preset Relative Reference <br>
Reference 1 Source <br>
Reference 2 Source <br>
Reference 3 Source <br>
Jog Speed [RPM] <br>
Ramp 1 <br>
Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time <br>
Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time <br>
Ramp 2 <br>
Ramp 2 Ramp Up Time <br>
Ramp 2 Ramp Down Time <br>
\hline Omp
\end{tabular}

$\qquad$ 3-0* $\quad$ Reference Limits Stator Leakage Reactance (X1)
Rotor Leakage Reactance (X2)
Main Reactance (Xh)
Iron Loss Resistance (Rfe)
d-axis Inductance (Ld)
Motor Poles
Back EMF at 1000 RPM
Position Detection Gain
Load Indep. Setting
Motor Magnetisation at Zero Speed
Min Speed Normal Magnetising [RPM]
Min Speed Normal Magnetising [Hz]
V/f Characteristic - V
V/f
Flying Start Test Pulses Current
Flying Start Test Pulses Frequency
Load Depen. Setting Load Sepen. Setting
High Speed Load Compensation
Lompensation Low Speed Load Compensation
High Speed Load Compensation
Slip Compensation Slip Compensation Time Constant
Resonance Damping Resonance Damping
Resonance Damping Time Constan Min. Current at Low Speed
Start Adjustments
PM Start Mode PM Start Mode
Start Delay
Start Function Start Function
Flying Start Compressor Start Max Speed [RPM]
Compressor Start Max Speed [Hz] Compressor Start Max Speed [Hz]
Pump Start Max Time to Trip Pump Start Max Time to Trip
Stop Adjustments


Motor Control Principle

Torque Characteristics | Clockwise Direction |
| :--- |
| Motor Selection | VVC+ PM Damping Gain High Speed Filter Time Const. $\qquad$ Motor Power [kW] Motor Power [HP] Motor Frequency Motor Current Motor Nominal Speed

Motor Cont. Rated Torque Motor Cont. Rated Torque Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)
Adv. Motor Data Stator Resistance (Rs) Rotor Resistance (Rr) Stator Leakage Reactance (X1)
Rotor Leakage Reactance (X2) Iron Loss Resistance (Rfe) Motor Poles Back EMF at 1000 RPM Ramp Time
 Regional Settings
Operating State at Power-up
Local Mode Unit
Set-up Operations
Active Set-up
Programming Set-up
This Set-up Linked to
Readout: Linked Set-ups
Readout: Prog. Set-ups / Channel
LCP Display
Display Line 1.1 Small
Display Line 1.2 Small
Display Line 1.3 Small
Display Line 2 Large
Display Line 3 Large
My Personal Menu
LCP Custom Readout
Custom Readout Unit
Custom Readout Min Value
 Display Text 1
Display Text 2
Display Text 3 LCP Keypad Hand on] Key on LCP
[Off] Key on LCP

 Drive Bypass] Key on LCP Drive Bypass] Key on LCP
Copy/Save CP Copy Main Menu Password Access to Main Menu w/o Password Personal Menu Password
Access to Personal Menu w/o Access to Personal Menu w/o Bus Password Access
Clock Settings
Date and Time

 DST/Summertime

 n
त्र
운
돔
3 Additional Non-Working Days Date and Time Readout General Settings


*



| Terminal X30/12 High Voltage |
| :--- |
| Term. X30/12 Low Ref./Feedb. Value |
| Term. X30/12 High Ref./Feedb. Value |
| Term. X30/12 Filter Time Constant |
| Term. X30/12 Live Zero |
| Analog Output 42 |
| Terminal 42 Output |
| Terminal 42 Output Min Scale |
| Terminal 42 Output Max Scale |
| Terminal 42 Output Bus Control |
| Terminal 42 Output Timeout Preset |
| Terminal 42 Output Filter |
| Analog Output X30/8 |
| Terminal X30/8 Output |
| Terminal X30/8 Min. Scale |
| Terminal X30/8 Max. Scale |
| Terminal X30/8 Output Bus Control |
| Terminal X30/8 Output Timeout Preset |
| Analog Output X45/1 |
| Terminal X45/1 Output |
| Terminal X45/1 Min. Scale |
| Terminal X45/1 Ma. Scale |
| Terminal X45/1 Bus Control |
| Terminal X45/1 Output Timeout Preset |
| Analog Output X45/3 |
| Terminal X45/3 Output |
| Terminal X45/3 Min. Scale |
| Terminal X45/3 Max. Scale |
| Terminal X45/3 Bus Control |
| Terminal X45/3 Output Timeout Preset |
| Comm. and Options |
| General Settings |
| Control Site |
| Control Source |
| Control Timeout Time |
| Control Timeout Function |
| End-of-Timeout Function |
| Reset Control Timeout |
| Diagnosis Trigger |
| Readout Filtering |
| Control Settings |
| Control Profile |
| Configurable Status Word STW |
| Configurable Control Word CTW |
| FC Port Settings |
| Protocol |
| Address |
| Baud Rate |
| Parity / Stop Bits |
| Minimum Response Delay |
| Max Response Delay |
| Maximum Inter-Char Delay |
| FC MC protocol set |
| Telegram Selection |
| PCD Write Configuration |
| PCD Read Configuration |
| Digital/Bus |
| Coasting Select |
| DC Brake Select |








## Spin Time for Unused Pumps Reset Current Runtime Hours Bandwidth Settings Range <br> 齐 <br> Override Limit <br>  <br>  $\stackrel{0}{0}$ 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0  

sbu！lıəs sбu！̣əs бu！bès
Auto Tune Staging
Ramp Down Delay Ramp Up Delay Staging Theshold Staging Speed $[\mathrm{RPM}]$
Staging Speed $[\mathrm{Hz}]$

Destaging Speed［RPM］
Alternate Settings
Automatic Alternation Alternation Event
Alternation Time Interval Alternation Timer Value
Alternation At Time of Day
 6 Alternate Capacity is＜

Action
Time
Action
act OFF
Maintenance
Item
 Maintenance Time Base Maintenance Time Interval Maintenance Dantenance Reset Reset Maintenance Word
京
$\stackrel{8}{9}$ Reset Energy Trending Variable

管
 Minimum Bin Value Reset Continuous Bin Payback Counter



> Value
b．Value

stant | O |
| :--- |
| $\frac{\pi}{0}$ |
| 0 | Analog Input

Terminal X42／1 Low
Terminal X42／1 High Terminal X42／1 High Voltage Term．X42／1 Low Ref．／Feed Term．X42／1 Filter Time 응 응 응 Terminal X42／5 X42／1 Pump ON Time
Relay ON Time
Reset Relay Coun

Service Interlock


## Cascade Status

 Pump Status Term．X42／1 Live Zero
Analog Input X42／3 Terminal X42／3 Low Voltage
Terminal X42／3 High Voltage

Terminal X42／3 High Voltage
Term．X42／3 Low Ref．／Feedb．Value Term．X42／3 High Ref．／Feedb．Value Term．X42／3 Filter Time Constant
Term．X42／3 Live Zero Term．X42／3 Live Zero
Analog Input X42／5
 Term．X42／5 Low Ref．／Feedb．Value
Term．X42／5 High Ref．／Feedb．Value Term．X42／5 High Ref．／Feedb．Value
Term．X42／5 Filter Time Constant Term．X42／5 Live Zero
Analog Out X42／7 Terminal X42／7 Output
 Terminal X42／7 Timeout Preset



System Settings
Cascade Controller
Motor Start
Pump Cycling
Fixed Lead Pum
Number of Pumps Bandwidth Settings Override Bandwidth Fixed Speed Bandwidth SBW Staging Delay
SBW Destaging Delay OBW Time Destage At No－Flow
Stage Function Stage Function Time Destage Function Time Staging Settings
Ramp Down Delay



## 7 General Specifications

Mains Supply (L1-1, L2-1, L3-1, L1-2, L2-2, L3-2)
Supply voltage
Supply voltage
Mains voltage low/mains drop-out:
During low mains voltage or a mains drop-out, the frequency converter continues until the intermediate circuit voltage drops
below the minimum stop level, which corresponds typically to $15 \%$ below the frequency converter's lowest rated supply voltage.
Power-up and full torque cannot be expected at mains voltage lower than 10\% below the frequency converter's lowest rated
supply voltage.
Supply frequency
Max. imbalance temporary between mains phases
True Power Factor ( $\lambda$ )
Displacement Power Factor ( $\cos \varphi$ ) near unity
Switching on input supply L1, L2, L3 (power-ups)
Environment according to EN60664-1
The unit is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100.000 RMS symmetrical Amperes, $480 / 690 \mathrm{~V}$
maximum.

Motor output (U, V, W)
Output voltage
Output frequency 0-800* Hz


Ramp times 1-3600 s

* Voltage and power dependent

Torque characteristics
Starting torque (constant torque) maximum $110 \%$ for 1 min .*
Starting torque maximum $135 \%$ up to $0.5 \mathrm{~s}^{*}$
Overload torque (constant torque) maximum $110 \%$ for 1 min .*
*Percentage relates to the frequency converter's nominal torque.
Cable lengths and cross-sections
Max. motor cable length, screened/armoured 150 m
Max. motor cable length, unscreened/unarmoured 300 m
Max. cross section to motor, mains, load sharing and brake *
Maximum cross section to control terminals, rigid wire $\quad 1.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} / 16$ AWG ( $2 \times 0.75 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ )
Maximum cross section to control terminals, flexible cable $1 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} / 18$ AWG
Maximum cross section to control terminals, cable with enclosed core $0.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} / 20$ AWG
Minimum cross section to control terminals $0.25 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$

* See chapter 7.1.1 Mains Supply $3 \times 380-500 \mathrm{~V}$ AC - High Power and chapter 7.1.1 Electrical Data - 525-690 VAC for more information.

Digital inputs
Programmable digital inputs
Terminal number
Logic
Voltage level
Voltage level, logic'0' PNP
Voltage level, logic'1' PNP
Voltage level, logic '0' NPN
Voltage level, logic '1' NPN
Maximum voltage on input
Input resistance, $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}$
All digital inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

1) Terminals 27 and 29 can also be programmed as output.
Analog inputs
Number of analog inputs
Terminal number
Modes
Mode select
Voltage mode
Voltage level
Input resistance, $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}$
Maximum voltage
Current mode
Current level
Input resistance, $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}$

The analog inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.


## Illustration 7.1 PELV Isolation of Analog Inputs

## Pulse inputs

Programmable pulse inputs
Terminal number pulse
Maximum frequency at terminal 29, 33
Maximum frequency at terminal 29, 33
5 kHz (open collector)
Minimum frequency at terminal 29, 33 4 Hz
Voltage level
Maximum voltage on input 28 VDC
Input resistance, $R_{i}$ approx. $4 \mathrm{k} \Omega$
Pulse input accuracy $(0.1-1 \mathrm{kHz}) \quad$ Maximum error $0.1 \%$ of full scale
Analog output
Number of programmable analog outputs 1
Terminal number
Current range at analog output $014-20 \mathrm{~mA}$
Maximum resistor load to common at analog output $500 \Omega$
Accuracy on analog output $\quad$ Maximum error $0.8 \%$ of full scale

| Resolution on analog output | 8 bit |
| :---: | :---: |
| The analog output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals. |  |
| Control card, RS-485 serial communication |  |
| Terminal number | 68 (P,TX+, RX+), 69 (N,TX-, RX-) |
| Terminal number 61 | Common for terminals 68 and 69 |
| The RS-485 serial communication circuit is functionally separated from other central circuits and galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV). |  |
| Digital output |  |
| Programmable digital/pulse outputs | 2 |
| Terminal number | 27, 291) |
| Voltage level at digital/frequency output | 0-24 V |
| Maximum output current (sink or source) | 40 mA |
| Maximum load at frequency output | $1 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| Maximum capacitive load at frequency output | 10 nF |
| Minimum output frequency at frequency output | 0 Hz |
| Maximum output frequency at frequency output | 32 kHz |
| Accuracy of frequency output | Maximum error $0.1 \%$ of full scale |
| Resolution of frequency outputs | 12 bit |

1) Terminal 27 and 29 can also be programmed as input.

The digital output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.
Control card, 24 V DC output

| Terminal number |
| :--- | :--- |
| Maximum load |

The 24 V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV), but has the same potential as the analog and digital inputs and outputs.

Relay outputs

| Programmable relay outputs | 2 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Relay 01 Terminal number | 1-3 (break), 1-2 (make) |
| Maximum terminal load (AC-1) ${ }^{1}$ on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO) (Resistive load) | $240 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}$, |
| Maximum terminal load (AC-15) ${ }^{1)}$ (Inductive load @ $\cos \varphi$ 0.4) | 240 V AC, 0.2 A |
| Maximum terminal load (DC-1)1) on 1-2 (NO), 1-3 (NC) (Resistive load) | $60 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{DC}$,1 A |
| Maximum terminal load (DC-13) ${ }^{1)}$ (Inductive load) | 24 V DC, 0.1 A |
| Relay 02 Terminal number | 4-6 (break), 4-5 (make) |
| Maximum terminal load ( $\mathrm{AC}-1)^{1)}$ on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load) ${ }^{233}$ ) | $400 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}$, |
| Maximum terminal load (AC-15)1) on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load @ $\cos \varphi$ 0.4) | 240 V AC, 0.2 A |
| Maximum terminal load (DC-1 $)^{1)}$ on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load) | 80 V DC, 2 A |
| Maximum terminal load (DC-13) ${ }^{1 /}$ on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load) | 24 V DC, 0.1 A |
| Maximum terminal load (AC-1 $)^{1)}$ on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load) | $240 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}$, |
| Maximum terminal load (AC-15)1) on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load @ $\cos \varphi$ 0.4) | 240 V AC, 0.2 A |
| Maximum terminal load (DC-1) ${ }^{1 /}$ on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load) | 50 V DC, 2 A |
| Maximum terminal load (DC-13) ${ }^{1}$ on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load) | 24 V DC, 0.1 A |
| Minimum terminal load on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO), 4-6 (NC), 4-5 (NO) | $10 \mathrm{~mA}, 24 \mathrm{~V}$ AC, 20 mA |
| Environment according to EN 60664-1 | ry $111 /$ pollution degree 2 |

[^6]Control card, 10 V DC output


## ACAUTION

Connection to PC is carried out via a standard host/device USB cable.
The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.
The USB connection is NOT galvanically isolated from protective earth. Use only isolated laptop/PC as connection to the USB connector on the frequency converter or an isolated USB cable/converter.

## Protection and features

- Electronic thermal motor protection against overload.
- Temperature monitoring of the heat sink ensures that the frequency converter trips if the temperature reaches a predefined level. An overload temperature cannot be reset until the temperature of the heat sink is below the
values stated in the tables on the following pages (Guideline - these temperatures may vary for different power sizes, frame sizes, enclosure ratings etc.).
- The frequency converter is protected against short circuits on motor terminals $\mathrm{U}, \mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W}$.
- If a mains phase is missing, the frequency converter trips or issues a warning (depending on the load).
- Monitoring of the intermediate circuit voltage ensures that the frequency converter trips if the intermediate circuit voltage is too low or too high.
- The frequency converter is protected against ground faults on motor terminals $\mathrm{U}, \mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W}$.

| Mains Supply $6 \times 380-500 \mathrm{~V}$ AC |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | P315 | P355 | P400 | P450 |
| Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW] | 315 | 355 | 400 | 450 |
| Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP] | 450 | 500 | 600 | 600 |
| Typical Shaft output at 500 V [kW] | 355 | 400 | 500 | 530 |
| Enclosure IP21 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 |
| Enclosure IP54 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 |
| Output current |  |  |  |  |
| Continuous (at 400 V ) [A] | 600 | 648 | 745 | 800 |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 400 V ) [A] | 660 | 724 | 820 | 880 |
| Continuous <br> (at 460/ 500 V ) [A] | 540 | 590 | 678 | 730 |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 460/ 500 V ) [A] | 594 | 649 | 746 | 803 |
| Continuous KVA (at 400 V ) [KVA] | 416 | 456 | 516 | 554 |
| Continuous KVA (at 460 V ) [KVA] | 430 | 470 | 540 | 582 |
| Continuous KVA (at 500 V ) [KVA] | 468 | 511 | 587 | 632 |
| Max. input current |  |  |  |  |
| Continuous (at 400 V ) [A] | 590 | 647 | 733 | 787 |
| Continuous (at 460/500 V) [A] | 531 | 580 | 667 | 718 |
| Max. cable size, mains [mm² (AWG2) ${ }^{2}$ ] | 4x90 (3/0) | $4 \times 90$ (3/0) | 4×240 (500 mcm) | $4 \times 240$ ( 500 mcm ) |
| Max. cable size, motor $\left[\mathrm{mm}^{2}\right.$ $\left(\mathrm{AWG}^{2}\right)$ ] | $\begin{gathered} 4 \times 240 \\ (4 \times 500 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 4 \times 240 \\ (4 \times 500 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 4 \times 240 \\ (4 \times 500 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 4 \times 240 \\ (4 \times 500 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |
| Max. cable size, brake $\left[\mathrm{mm}^{2}\right.$ (AWG²) | $\begin{gathered} 2 \times 185 \\ (2 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 2 \times 185 \\ (2 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 2 \times 185 \\ (2 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 2 \times 185 \\ (2 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] ${ }^{1}$ | 700 |  |  |  |
| Estimated power loss at 400 V [W] ${ }^{4)}$ | 6790 | 7701 | 8879 | 9670 |
| Estimated power loss at 460 V [W] | 6082 | 6953 | 8089 | 8803 |
| Weight,enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg] | 440/656 |  |  |  |
| Efficiency ${ }^{4}$ | 0.98 |  |  |  |
| Output frequency | 0-600Hz |  |  |  |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip | $95^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |
| Power card ambient trip | $68{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |
| ${ }^{*}$ High overload $=160 \%$ torque during 60 sec , Normal overload $=110 \%$ torque during 60 sec . |  |  |  |  |

## Table 7.1

| Mains Supply $6 \times 380-500 \mathrm{~V}$ AC |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | P500 | P560 | P630 | P710 | P800 | P1000 |
| Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW] | 500 | 560 | 630 | 710 | 800 | 1000 |
| Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP] | 650 | 750 | 900 | 1000 | 1200 | 1350 |
| Typical Shaft output at 500 V [kW] | 560 | 630 | 710 | 800 | 1000 | 1100 |
| EnclosureIP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet | F10/F11 | F10/F11 | F10/F11 | F10/F11 | F12/F13 | F12/F13 |
| Output current |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Continuous (at 400 V ) [A] | 880 | 990 | 1120 | 1260 | 1460 | 1720 |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 400 V ) [A] | 968 | 1089 | 1232 | 1386 | 1606 | 1892 |
| $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { Continuous } \\ \text { (at } 460 / 500 \mathrm{~V} \text { ) [A] } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | 780 | 890 | 1050 | 1160 | 1380 | 1530 |
| Intermittent ( 60 sec overload) <br> (at 460/500 V) [A] | 858 | 979 | 1155 | 1276 | 1518 | 1683 |
| Continuous KVA (at 400 V ) [KVA] | 610 | 686 | 776 | 873 | 1012 | 1192 |
| Continuous KVA (at 460 V ) [KVA] | 621 | 709 | 837 | 924 | 1100 | 1219 |
| Continuous KVA (at 500 V ) [KVA] | 675 | 771 | 909 | 1005 | 1195 | 1325 |
| Max. input current |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Continuous (at 400 V ) [A] | 857 | 964 | 1090 | 1227 | 1422 | 1675 |
| Continuous (at $460 / 500 \mathrm{~V}$ ) [A] | 759 | 867 | 1022 | 1129 | 1344 | 1490 |
| Max. cable size,motor $\left[\mathrm{mm}^{2}\right.$ $\left(\mathrm{AWG}^{2}\right)$ ] | $\begin{gathered} 8 \times 150 \\ (8 \times 300 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  | $\begin{gathered} 12 \times 150 \\ (12 \times 300 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |  |
| Max. cable size,mains [mm² (AWG ${ }^{2}$ )] | $\begin{gathered} 6 \times 120 \\ (6 \times 250 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max. cable size, brake $\left[\mathrm{mm}^{2}\right.$ (AWG ${ }^{2}$ ) | $\begin{gathered} 4 \times 185 \\ (4 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  | $\begin{gathered} 6 \times 185 \\ (6 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |  |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] <br> 1) | 900 |  |  | 1500 |  |  |
| Estimated power loss at 400 V [W] ${ }^{4)}$ | 10647 | 12338 | 13201 | 15436 | 18084 | 20358 |
| Estimated power loss at 460 V [W] | 9414 | 11006 | 12353 | 14041 | 17137 | 17752 |
| F9/F11/F13 max. added losses A1 RFI, CB or Disconnect, \& contactor F9/F11/F13 | 963 | 1054 | 1093 | 1230 | 2280 | 2541 |
| Max. panel options losses | 400 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Weight, enclosure IP21, IP54 [kg] | 1004/ 1299 | 1004/ 1299 | 1004/ 1299 | 1004/1299 | 1246/ 1541 | 1246/ 1541 |
| Weight rectifier module [kg] | 102 | 102 | 102 | 102 | 136 | 136 |
| Weight inverter module [kg] | 102 | 102 | 102 | 136 | 102 | 102 |
| Efficiency ${ }^{4}$ | 0.98 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Output frequency | 0-600Hz |  |  |  |  |  |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip | $95^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| Power card ambient trip | $68{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| ${ }^{*}$ High overload $=160 \%$ torque during 60 sec., Normal overload $=110 \%$ torque during 60 sec . |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## Table 7.2

| Mains Supply $3 \times 525-690 \mathrm{~V}$ AC |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | P450 | P500 | P560 | P630 |
| Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW] | 355 | 400 | 450 | 500 |
| Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP] | 450 | 500 | 600 | 650 |
| Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW] | 450 | 500 | 560 | 630 |
| Enclosure IP21 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 |
| Enclosure IP54 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 | F8/F9 |
| Output current |  |  |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Continuous } \\ & \text { (at } 550 \mathrm{~V} \text { ) }[\mathrm{A}] \end{aligned}$ | 470 | 523 | 596 | 630 |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V ) [A] | 517 | 575 | 656 | 693 |
| $\begin{array}{\|l} \text { Continuous } \\ \text { (at } 575 / 690 \mathrm{~V} \text { ) }[\mathrm{A}] \end{array}$ | 450 | 500 | 570 | 630 |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V ) [A] | 495 | 550 | 627 | 693 |
| Continuous KVA (at 550 V ) [KVA] | 448 | 498 | 568 | 600 |
| Continuous KVA (at 575 V ) [KVA] | 448 | 498 | 568 | 627 |
| Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA] | 538 | 598 | 681 | 753 |
| Max. input current |  |  |  |  |
| Continuous $\text { (at } 550 \mathrm{~V} \text { ) [A] }$ | 453 | 504 | 574 | 607 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Continuous } \\ & \text { (at } 575 \mathrm{~V} \text { ) }[\mathrm{A}] \end{aligned}$ | 434 | 482 | 549 | 607 |
| Continuous (at 690 V ) [A] | 434 | 482 | 549 | 607 |
| Max. cable size, mains [mm² (AWG)] | 4x85 (3/0) |  |  |  |
| Max. cable size, motor $\left[\mathrm{mm}^{2}\right.$ (AWG)] | $4 \times 250$ ( 500 mcm ) |  |  |  |
| Max. cable size, brake [mm² (AWG)] | $\begin{gathered} 2 \times 185 \\ (2 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 2 \times 185 \\ (2 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} 2 \times 185 \\ (2 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 2 \times 185 \\ (2 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] ${ }^{1}$ | 630 |  |  |  |
| Estimated power loss at 600 V [W] ${ }^{4)}$ | 6132 | 6903 | 8343 | 9244 |
| Estimated power loss at 690 V [W] ${ }^{4)}$ | 6449 | 7249 | 8727 | 9673 |
| Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg] | 440/656 |  |  |  |
| Efficiency ${ }^{4}$ | 0.98 |  |  |  |
| Output frequency | 0-500 Hz |  |  |  |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip | $85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |
| Power card ambient trip | $68^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |
| * High overload $=160 \%$ torque during 60 sec , Normal overload $=110 \%$ torque during 60 sec . |  |  |  |  |

## Table 7.3

| Mains Supply $3 \times 525-690 \mathrm{~V}$ AC |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | P710 | P800 | P900 |
| Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW] | 560 | 670 | 750 |
| Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP] | 750 | 950 | 1050 |
| Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW] | 710 | 800 | 900 |
| Enclosure IP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet | F10/F11 | F10/F11 | F10/F11 |
| Output current |  |  |  |
| Continuous (at 550 V ) [A] | 763 | 889 | 988 |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V ) [A] | 839 | 978 | 1087 |
| Continuous (at 575/ 690 V ) [A] | 730 | 850 | 945 |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V ) [A] | 803 | 935 | 1040 |
| Continuous KVA (at 550 V ) [KVA] | 727 | 847 | 941 |
| Continuous KVA (at 690 V ) [KVA] | 872 | 1016 | 1129 |
| Max. input current |  |  |  |
| Continuous (at 550 V ) [A] | 743 | 866 | 962 |
| Continuous (at 575 V ) [A] | 711 | 828 | 920 |
| Continuous (at 690 V ) [A] | 711 | 828 | 920 |
| Max. cable size, motor [mm ${ }^{(12 W G 2)}$ ] $]$ |  | $\begin{gathered} 8 \times 150 \\ (8 \times 300 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |  |
| Max. cable size,mains [mm ${ }^{2}\left(\mathrm{AWG}^{2}\right)$ ] |  | $\begin{gathered} 6 \times 120 \\ (6 \times 250 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |  |
| Max. cable size, brake [mm ${ }^{2}\left(\mathrm{AWG}^{2}\right)$ ) |  | $\begin{gathered} 4 \times 185 \\ (4 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \end{gathered}$ |  |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] ${ }^{1}$ |  | 900 |  |
| Estimated power loss at 600 V [W] ${ }^{4)}$ | 10771 | 12272 | 13835 |
| Estimated power loss at 690 V [W] ${ }^{4)}$ | 11315 | 12903 | 14533 |
| F3/F4 Max added losses CB or Disconnect \& Contactor | 427 | 532 | 615 |
| Max panel options losses |  | 400 |  |
| Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg] | 1004/ 1299 | 1004/ 1299 | 1004/1299 |
| Weight, Rectifier Module [kg] | 102 | 102 | 102 |
| Weight, Inverter Module [kg] | 102 | 102 | 136 |
| Efficiency ${ }^{\text {4 }}$ |  | 0.98 |  |
| Output frequency |  | 0-500 Hz |  |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip |  | $85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |
| Power card ambient trip |  | $68{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |
| ${ }^{*}$ High overload $=160 \%$ torque during 60 sec., Normal overload $=110 \%$ torque during 60 sec . |  |  |  |

Table 7.4

| Mains Supply $3 \times 525-690 \mathrm{~V}$ AC |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | P1M0 | P1M2 | P1M4 |
| Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW] | 850 | 1000 | 1100 |
| Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP] | 1150 | 1350 | 1550 |
| Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW] | 1000 | 1200 | 1400 |
| Enclosure IP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet | F12/F13 | F12/F13 | F12/F13 |
| Output current |  |  |  |
| Continuous (at 550 V ) [A] | 1108 | 1317 | 1479 |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V ) [A] | 1219 | 1449 | 1627 |
| Continuous (at 575/ 690 V ) [A] | 1060 | 1260 | 1415 |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V ) [A] | 1166 | 1386 | 1557 |
| Continuous KVA (at 550 V ) [KVA] | 1056 | 1255 | 1409 |
| Continuous KVA (at 690 V ) [KVA] | 1267 | 1506 | 1691 |
| Max. input current |  |  |  |
| Continuous (at 550 V ) [A] | 1079 | 1282 | 1440 |
| Continuous (at 575 V ) [A] | 1032 | 1227 | 1378 |
| Continuous (at 690 V ) [A] | 1032 | 1227 | 1378 |
| Max. cable size, motor [mm ${ }^{2}\left(\mathrm{AWG}^{2}\right)$ ] | $12 \times 150$$(12 \times 300 \mathrm{mcm})$ |  |  |
| Max. cable size,mains F12 [mm ${ }^{2}$ (AWG2) ${ }^{2}$ ] | $8 \times 240$$(8 \times 500 \mathrm{mcm})$ |  |  |
| Max. cable size,mains F13 [mm² $\left(\mathrm{AWG}^{2}\right)$ ] | $\begin{gathered} 8 \times 400 \\ (8 \times 900 \mathrm{mcm}) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |  |  |
| Max. cable size, brake [mm ${ }^{2}\left(\mathrm{AWG}^{2}\right)$ ) | $\begin{gathered} 6 \times 185 \\ (6 \times 350 \mathrm{mcm}) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |  |  |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] ${ }^{1}$ | 1600 | 2000 | 2500 |
| Estimated power loss at 600 V [W] ${ }^{4)}$ | 15592 | 18281 | 20825 |
| Estimated power loss at 690 V [W] ${ }^{4)}$ | 16375 | 19207 | 21857 |
| F3/F4 Max added losses CB or Disconnect \& Contactor | 665 | 863 | 1044 |
| Max panel options losses | 400 |  |  |
| Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg] | 1246/ 1541 | 1246/ 1541 | 1280/1575 |
| Weight, Rectifier Module [kg] | 136 | 136 | 136 |
| Weight, Inverter Module [kg] | 102 | 102 | 136 |
| Efficiency ${ }^{4}$ | 0.98 |  |  |
| Output frequency | $0-500 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |  |  |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip | $85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |
| Power card ambient trip | $68^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |
| * High overload $=160 \%$ torque during 60 sec., Normal overload $=110 \%$ torque during 60 sec . |  |  |  |

1) For type of fuse see section Fuses.
2) American Wire Gauge.
3) Measured using 5 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
4) The typical power loss is at nominal load conditions and expected to be within $+/-15 \%$ (tolerence relates to variety in voltage and cable conditions).
Values are based on a typical motor efficiency (eff2/eff3 border line). Motors with lower efficiency will also add to the power loss in the frequency converter and opposite.
If the switching frequency is increased compared to the default setting, the power losses may rise significantly. LCP and typical control card power consumptions are included. Further options and customer load may add up to 30W to the losses. (Though typical only 4W extra for a fully loaded control card, or options for slot A or slot B, each).
Although measurements are made with state of the art equipment, some measurement inaccuracy must be allowed for (+/-5\%).

## 8 Troubleshooting

### 8.1 Alarms and Warnings

A warning or an alarm is signalled by the relevant LED on the front of the frequency converter and indicated by a code on the display.

A warning remains active until its cause is no longer present. Under certain circumstances operation of the motor may still be continued. Warning messages may be critical, but are not necessarily so.

In the event of an alarm, the frequency converter will have tripped. Alarms must be reset to restart operation once their cause has been rectified.

## This may be done in 4 ways:

1. By pressing [RESET] on the LCP.
2. Via a digital input with the "Reset" function.
3. Via serial communication/optional fieldbus.
4. By resetting automatically using the [Auto Reset] function. See $14-20$ Reset Mode inVLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ AQUA Drive FC 202 Programming Guide

## NOTICE

After a manual reset pressing [RESET] on the LCP, press [AUTO ON] or [HAND ON] to restart the motor.

If an alarm cannot be reset, the reason may be that its cause has not been rectified, or the alarm is trip-locked (see also table on following page).

Alarms that are trip-locked offer additional protection, means that the mains supply must be switched off before the alarm can be reset. After being switched back on, the frequency converter is no longer blocked and may be reset as described above once the cause has been rectified.

Alarms that are not trip-locked can also be reset using the automatic reset function in 14-20 Reset Mode (Warning: automatic wake-up is possible!)

If a warning and alarm is marked against a code in the table on the following page, this means that either a warning occurs before an alarm, or it can be specified whether it is a warning or an alarm that is to be displayed for a given fault.

This is possible, for instance, in 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection. After an alarm or trip, the motor carries on coasting, and the alarm and warning flash on the frequency converter. Once the problem has been rectified, only the alarm continues flashing.

| No. | Description | Warning | Alarm/Trip | Alarm/Trip Lock | Parameter Reference |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 10 Volts low | X |  |  |  |
| 2 | Live zero error | (X) | (X) |  | 6-01 |
| 3 | No motor | (X) |  |  | 1-80 |
| 4 | Mains phase loss | (X) | (X) | (X) | 14-12 |
| 5 | DC link voltage high | X |  |  |  |
| 6 | DC link voltage low | X |  |  |  |
| 7 | DC over voltage | X | X |  |  |
| 8 | DC under voltage | X | X |  |  |
| 9 | Inverter overloaded | X | X |  |  |
| 10 | Motor ETR over temperature | (X) | (X) |  | 1-90 |
| 11 | Motor thermistor over temperature | (X) | (X) |  | 1-90 |
| 12 | Torque limit | X | X |  |  |
| 13 | Over Current | X | X | X |  |
| 14 | Earth fault | X | X | X |  |
| 15 | Hardware mismatch |  | X | X |  |
| 16 | Short Circuit |  | X | X |  |
| 17 | Control word timeout | (X) | (X) |  | 8-04 |
| 23 | Internal Fan Fault | X |  |  |  |
| 24 | External Fan Fault | X |  |  | 14-53 |
| 25 | Brake resistor short-circuited | X |  |  |  |
| 26 | Brake resistor power limit | (X) | (X) |  | 2-13 |
| 27 | Brake chopper short-circuited | X | X |  |  |


| No. | Description | Warning | Alarm/Trip | Alarm/Trip Lock | Parameter Reference |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 28 | Brake check | (X) | (X) |  | 2-15 |
| 29 | Drive over temperature | X | X | X |  |
| 30 | Motor phase U missing | (X) | (X) | (X) | 4-58 |
| 31 | Motor phase V missing | (X) | (X) | (X) | 4-58 |
| 32 | Motor phase W missing | (X) | (X) | (X) | 4-58 |
| 33 | Inrush fault |  | X | X |  |
| 34 | Fieldbus communication fault | X | X |  |  |
| 35 | Out of frequency range | X | X |  |  |
| 36 | Mains failure | X | X |  |  |
| 37 | Phase Imbalance | X | X |  |  |
| 39 | Heatsink sensor |  | X | X |  |
| 40 | Overload of Digital Output Terminal 27 | (X) |  |  | 5-00, 5-01 |
| 41 | Overload of Digital Output Terminal 29 | (X) |  |  | 5-00, 5-02 |
| 42 | Overload of Digital Output On X30/6 | (X) |  |  | 5-32 |
| 42 | Overload of Digital Output On X30/7 | (X) |  |  | 5-33 |
| 46 | Pwr. card supply |  | X | X |  |
| 47 | 24 V supply low | X | X | X |  |
| 48 | 1.8 V supply low |  | X | X |  |
| 49 | Speed limit | X |  |  |  |
| 50 | AMA calibration failed |  | X |  |  |
| 51 | AMA check $U_{\text {nom }}$ and $I_{\text {nom }}$ |  | X |  |  |
| 52 | AMA low Inom |  | X |  |  |
| 53 | AMA motor too big |  | X |  |  |
| 54 | AMA motor too small |  | X |  |  |
| 55 | AMA parameter out of range |  | X |  |  |
| 56 | AMA interrupted by user |  | X |  |  |
| 57 | AMA timeout |  | X |  |  |
| 58 | AMA internal fault | X | X |  |  |
| 59 | Current limit | X |  |  |  |
| 60 | External Interlock | X |  |  |  |
| 62 | Output Frequency at Maximum Limit | X |  |  |  |
| 64 | Voltage Limit | X |  |  |  |
| 65 | Control Board Over-temperature | X | X | X |  |
| 66 | Heat sink Temperature Low | X |  |  |  |
| 67 | Option Configuration has Changed |  | X |  |  |
| 68 | Safe Stop Activated |  | $\mathrm{X}^{1}$ |  |  |
| 69 | Pwr. Card Temp |  | X | X |  |
| 70 | Illegal FC configuration |  |  | X |  |
| 71 | PTC 1 Safe Stop | X | $\mathrm{X}^{1}$ |  |  |
| 72 | Dangerous Failure |  |  | $\mathrm{X}^{1}$ |  |
| 73 | Safe Stop Auto Restart |  |  |  |  |
| 76 | Power Unit Setup | X |  |  |  |
| 79 | Illegal PS config |  | X | X |  |
| 80 | Drive Initialised to Default Value |  | X |  |  |
| 91 | Analog input 54 wrong settings |  |  | X |  |
| 92 | NoFlow | X | X |  | 22-2* |
| 93 | Dry Pump | X | X |  | 22-2* |
| 94 | End of Curve | X | X |  | 22-5* |
| 95 | Broken Belt | X | X |  | 22-6* |
| 96 | Start Delayed | X |  |  | 22-7* |
| 97 | Stop Delayed | X |  |  | 22-7* |
| 98 | Clock Fault | X |  |  | 0-7* |


| No. | Description | Warning | Alarm/Trip | Alarm/Trip Lock | Parameter Reference |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 220 | Overload Trip |  | X |  |  |
| 243 | Brake IGBT | X | X |  |  |
| 244 | Heatsink temp | X | X | X |  |
| 245 | Heatsink sensor |  | X | X |  |
| 246 | Pwr.card supply |  | X | X |  |
| 247 | Pwr.card temp |  | X | X |  |
| 248 | Illegal PS config |  | X | X |  |
| 250 | New spare part |  |  | X |  |
| 251 | New Type Code |  | X | X |  |

## Table 8.1 Alarm/Warning Code List

(X) Dependent on parameter

1) Cannot be Auto reset via 14-20 Reset Mode

A trip is the action when an alarm has appeared. The trip coasts the motor and can be reset by pressing [Reset] or making a reset by a digital input (Par. 5-1* Digital Inputs [1] Reset). The origin event that caused an alarm cannot damage the frequency converter or cause dangerous conditions. A trip lock is an action when an alarm occurs, which may cause damage to frequency converter or connected parts. A Trip Lock situation can only be reset by a power cycling.

| LED indication |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Warning | yellow |
| Alarm | flashing red |
| Trip locked | yellow and red |

Table 8.2

| Alarm Word and Extended Status Word |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Bit | Hex | Dec | Alarm Word | Warning Word | Extended Status Word |
| 0 | 00000001 | 1 | Brake Check | Brake Check | Ramping |
| 1 | 00000002 | 2 | Pwr. Card Temp | Pwr. Card Temp | AMA Running |
| 2 | 00000004 | 4 | Earth Fault | Earth Fault | Start CW/CCW |
| 3 | 00000008 | 8 | Ctrl.Card Temp | Ctrl.Card Temp | Slow Down |
| 4 | 00000010 | 16 | Ctrl. Word TO | Ctrl. Word TO | Catch Up |
| 5 | 00000020 | 32 | Over Current | Over Current | Feedback High |
| 6 | 00000040 | 64 | Torque Limit | Torque Limit | Feedback Low |
| 7 | 00000080 | 128 | Motor Th Over | Motor Th Over | Output Current High |
| 8 | 00000100 | 256 | Motor ETR Over | Motor ETR Over | Output Current Low |
| 9 | 00000200 | 512 | Inverter Overld. | Inverter Overld. | Output Freq High |
| 10 | 00000400 | 1024 | DC under Volt | DC under Volt | Output Freq Low |
| 11 | 00000800 | 2048 | DC over Volt | DC over Volt | Brake Check OK |
| 12 | 00001000 | 4096 | Short Circuit | DC Voltage Low | Braking Max |
| 13 | 00002000 | 8192 | Inrush Fault | DC Voltage High | Braking |
| 14 | 00004000 | 16384 | Mains ph. Loss | Mains ph. Loss | Out of Speed Range |
| 15 | 00008000 | 32768 | AMA Not OK | No Motor | OVC Active |
| 16 | 00010000 | 65536 | Live Zero Error | Live Zero Error |  |
| 17 | 00020000 | 131072 | Internal Fault | 10V Low |  |
| 18 | 00040000 | 262144 | Brake Overload | Brake Overload |  |
| 19 | 00080000 | 524288 | U phase Loss | Brake Resistor |  |
| 20 | 00100000 | 1048576 | V phase Loss | Brake IGBT |  |
| 21 | 00200000 | 2097152 | W phase Loss | Speed Limit |  |
| 22 | 00400000 | 4194304 | Fieldbus Fault | Fieldbus Fault |  |
| 23 | 00800000 | 8388608 | 24 V Supply Low | 24V Supply Low |  |
| 24 | 01000000 | 16777216 | Mains Failure | Mains Failure |  |
| 25 | 02000000 | 33554432 | 1.8V Supply Low | Current Limit |  |
| 26 | 04000000 | 67108864 | Brake Resistor | Low Temp |  |
| 27 | 08000000 | 134217728 | Brake IGBT | Voltage Limit |  |
| 28 | 10000000 | 268435456 | Option Change | Unused |  |
| 29 | 20000000 | 536870912 | Drive Initialised | Unused |  |
| 30 | 40000000 | 1073741824 | Safe Stop | Unused |  |

Table 8.3 Description of Alarm Word, Warning Word and Extended Status Word

The alarm words, warning words and extended status words can be read out via serial bus or optional fieldbus for diagnosis. See also 16-90 Alarm Word, 16-92 Warning Word and 16-94 Ext. Status Word.

## WARNING 1, 10 Volts low

The control card voltage is $<10 \mathrm{~V}$ from terminal 50. Remove some of the load from terminal 50, as the 10 V supply is overloaded. Maximum 15 mA or minimum $590 \Omega$.
A short-circuit in a connected potentiometer or improper wiring of the potentiometer can cause this condition.

## Troubleshooting

- Remove the wiring from terminal 50 . If the warning clears, the problem is with the wiring. If the warning does not clear, replace the control card.


## WARNING/ALARM 2, Live zero error

This warning or alarm only appears if programmed in parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function. The signal on one of the analog inputs is less than $50 \%$ of the minimum value programmed for that input. Broken wiring or a faulty device sending the signal can cause this condition.

## Troubleshooting

- Check the connections on all the analog input terminals.
- Control card terminals 53 and 54 for signals, terminal 55 common.
- MCB 101 terminals 11 and 12 for signals, terminal 10 common.
- MCB 109 terminals 1,3,5 for signals, terminals $2,4,6$ common.
- Check that the frequency converter programming and switch settings match the analog signal type.
- Perform an input terminal signal test.


## WARNING/ALARM 3, No motor

No motor has been connected to the output of the frequency converter.

## WARNING/ALARM 4, Mains phase loss

A phase is missing on the supply side, or the mains voltage imbalance is too high. This message also appears for a fault in the input rectifier on the frequency converter. Options are programmed in 14-12 Function at Mains Imbalance.

## Troubleshooting

- Check the supply voltage and supply currents to the frequency converter.


## WARNING 5, DC link voltage high

The intermediate circuit voltage (DC) is higher than the high-voltage warning limit. The limit is dependent on the frequency converter voltage rating. The unit is still active.

## WARNING 6, DC link voltage low

The intermediate circuit voltage (DC) is lower than the lowvoltage warning limit. The limit is dependent on the frequency converter voltage rating. The unit is still active.

## WARNING/ALARM 7, DC overvoltage

If the intermediate circuit voltage exceeds the limit, the frequency converter trips after a time.

## Troubleshooting

- Connect a brake resistor
- Extend the ramp time.
- Change the ramp type.
- Activate the functions in 2-10 Brake Function.
- Increase 14-26 Trip Delay at Inverter Fault
- If the alarm/warning occurs during a power sag, use kinetic back-up (14-10 Mains Failure).


## WARNING/ALARM 8, DC under voltage

If the DC -link voltage drops below the undervoltage limit, the frequency converter checks if a 24 V DC backup supply is connected. If no 24 V DC backup supply is connected, the frequency converter trips after a fixed time delay. The time delay varies with unit size.

## Troubleshooting

- Check that the supply voltage matches the frequency converter voltage.
- Perform an input voltage test.
- Perform a soft charge circuit test.

WARNING/ALARM 9, Inverter overload
The frequency converter is about to cut out because of an overload. The counter for electronic, thermal inverter protection issues a warning at $98 \%$ and trips at $100 \%$, while giving an alarm. The frequency converter cannot be reset until the counter is below $90 \%$.
The fault is that the frequency converter has run with more than 100\% overload for too long.

## Troubleshooting

- Compare the output current shown on the LCP with the frequency converter rated current.
- Compare the output current shown on the LCP with the measured motor current.
- Display the thermal drive load on the LCP and monitor the value. When running above the frequency converter continuous current rating, the counter increases. When running below the frequency converter continuous current rating, the counter decreases.


## WARNING/ALARM 10, Motor overload temperature

According to the electronic thermal protection (ETR), the motor is too hot. Select whether the frequency converter issues a warning or an alarm when the counter reaches $100 \%$ in 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection. The fault occurs when the motor runs with more than $100 \%$ overload for too long.

## Troubleshooting

- Check for motor overheating.
- Check if the motor is mechanically overloaded.
- Check that the motor current set in 1-24 Motor Current is correct.
- Ensure that the motor data in parameters 1-20 to 1-25 are set correctly.
- If an external fan is in use, check that it is selected in 1-91 Motor External Fan.
- Running AMA in parameter 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA) tunes the frequency converter to the motor more accurately and reduces thermal loading.


## WARNING/ALARM 11, Motor thermistor overtemp

The thermistor may be disconnected. Select whether the frequency converter issues a warning or an alarm in 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection.

## Troubleshooting

- Check for motor overheating.
- Check if the motor is mechanically overloaded.
- Check that the thermistor is connected correctly between either terminal 53 or 54 (analog voltage input) and terminal 50 ( +10 V supply). Also check that the terminal switch for 53 or 54 is set for voltage. Check that 1-93 Thermistor Source is set to terminal 53 or 54.
- When using digital inputs 18 or 19 , check that the thermistor is connected correctly between either terminal 18 or 19 (digital input PNP only) and terminal 50.
- If a KTY sensor is used, check for correct connection between terminals 54 and 55
- If using a thermal switch or thermistor, check that the programming of 1-93 Thermistor Source matches sensor wiring.
- If using a KTY Sensor, check the programming of 1-95 KTY Sensor Type, 1-96 KTY Thermistor Resource and 1-97 KTY Threshold level match sensor wiring.


## WARNING/ALARM 12, Torque limit

The torque has exceeded the value in 4-16 Torque Limit Motor Mode or the value in 4-17 Torque Limit Generator Mode. 14-25 Trip Delay at Torque Limit can change this warning from a warning-only condition to a warning followed by an alarm.

## Troubleshooting

- If the motor torque limit is exceeded during ramp up, extend the ramp-up time.
- If the generator torque limit is exceeded during ramp-down, extend the ramp down time.
- If torque limit occurs while running, increase the torque limit. Make sure that the system can operate safely at a higher torque.
- Check the application for excessive current draw on the motor.


## WARNING/ALARM 13, Over current

The inverter peak current limit (approximately 200\% of the rated current) is exceeded. The warning lasts approximately 1.5 s , then the frequency converter trips and issues an alarm. Shock loading or quick acceleration with high inertia loads can cause this fault. If the acceleration during ramp-up is quick, the fault can also appear after kinetic back-up.
If extended mechanical brake control is selected, a trip can be reset externally.

## Troubleshooting

- Remove the power and check if the motor shaft can be turned.
- Check that the motor size matches the frequency converter.
- Check that the motor data is correct in parameters 1-20 to 1-25.


## ALARM 14, Earth (ground) fault

There is current from the output phases to ground, either in the cable between the frequency converter and the motor, or in the motor itself.

## Troubleshooting

- Remove the power to the frequency converter and repair the ground fault.
- Check for ground faults in the motor by measuring the resistance to the ground of the motor cables and the motor with a megohmmeter.
- Perform a current sensor test.


## ALARM 15, Hardware mismatch

A fitted option is not operational with the present control board hardware or software.

Record the value of the following parameters and contact Danfoss:

- 15-40 FC Type
- 15-41 Power Section
- 15-42 Voltage
- 15-43 Software Version
- 15-45 Actual Typecode String
- 15-49 SW ID Control Card
- 15-50 SW ID Power Card
- 15-60 Option Mounted
- 15-61 Option SW Version (for each option slot)


## ALARM 16, Short circuit

There is short-circuiting in the motor or motor wiring.

## Troubleshooting

- Remove the power to the frequency converter and repair the short-circuit.

WARNING/ALARM 17, Control word timeout
There is no communication with the frequency converter.

The warning is only active when 8-04 Control Timeout Function is not set to [0] Off.
If 8 -04 Control Timeout Function is set to [2] Stop and [26]
Trip, a warning appears and the frequency converter ramps down until it trips and then displays an alarm.

## Troubleshooting:

- Check the connections on the serial communication cable.
- Increase 8-03 Control Timeout Time
- Check the operation of the communication equipment.
- Verify a proper installation based on EMC requirements.


## WARNING 23, Internal fan fault

The fan warning function is an extra protective function that checks if the fan is running/mounted. The fan warning can be disabled in 14-53 Fan Monitor ([0] Disabled).

## Troubleshooting

- Check the fan resistance.
- Check the soft charge fuses.


## WARNING 24, External fan fault

The fan warning function is an extra protective function that checks if the fan is running/mounted. The fan warning can be disabled in 14-53 Fan Monitor ([0] Disabled).

## Troubleshooting

- Check the fan resistance.
- Check the soft charge fuses.

WARNING 25, Brake resistor short circuit
The brake resistor is monitored during operation. If a short-circuit occurs, the brake function is disabled and the warning appears. The frequency converter is still operational, but without the brake function.

## Troubleshooting

- Remove the power to the frequency converter and replace the brake resistor (see 2-15 Brake Check).


## WARNING/ALARM 26, Brake resistor power limit

The power transmitted to the brake resistor is calculated as a mean value over the last 120 s of run time. The calculation is based on the intermediate circuit voltage and the brake resistance value set in 2-16 AC brake Max. Current. The warning is active when the dissipated braking is $>90 \%$ of the brake resistance power. If [2] Trip is selected in 2-13 Brake Power Monitoring, the frequency converter trips when the dissipated braking power reaches 100\%.

## AWARNING

If the brake transistor is short-circuited, there is a risk of substantial power being transmitted to the brake resistor.

WARNING/ALARM 27, Brake chopper fault
The brake transistor is monitored during operation. If a short-circuit occurs, the brake function is disabled and a warning is issued. The frequency converter is still operational, but since the brake transistor has shortcircuited, substantial power is transmitted to the brake resistor, even if it is inactive.
Remove the power to the frequency converter and remove the brake resistor.

This alarm/warning could also occur if the brake resistor overheats. Terminals 104 and 106 are available as brake resistors Klixon inputs.

WARNING/ALARM 28, Brake check failed
The brake resistor is not connected or not working.
Check 2-15 Brake Check.
ALARM 29, Heat Sink temp
The maximum temperature of the heat sink has been exceeded. The temperature fault resets when the temperature falls below a defined heat sink temperature. The trip and reset points vary based on the frequency converter power size.

## Troubleshooting

Check for the following conditions.

- Ambient temperature too high.
- Motor cables too long.
- Incorrect airflow clearance above and below the frequency converter.
- Blocked airflow around the frequency converter.
- Damaged heat sink fan.
- Dirty heat sink.

For $D, E$, and $F$ enclosures, this alarm is based on the temperature measured by the heat sink sensor mounted inside the IGBT modules. For the $F$ enclosures, the thermal sensor in the rectifier module can also cause this alarm.

## Troubleshooting

- Check the fan resistance.
- Check the soft charge fuses.
- Check the IGBT thermal sensor.

ALARM 30, Motor phase U missing
Motor phase $U$ between the frequency converter and the motor is missing.

## Troubleshooting

- Remove the power from the frequency converter and check motor phase $U$.

ALARM 31, Motor phase V missing
Motor phase $V$ between the frequency converter and the motor is missing.

## Troubleshooting

- Remove the power from the frequency converter and check motor phase V .


## ALARM 32, Motor phase W missing

Motor phase W between the frequency converter and the motor is missing.

## Troubleshooting

- Remove the power from the frequency converter and check motor phase W.


## ALARM 33, Inrush fault

Too many power-ups have occurred within a short time period.

## Troubleshooting

- Let the unit cool to operating temperature.

WARNING/ALARM 34, Fieldbus communication fault The fieldbus on the communication option card is not working.

## WARNING/ALARM 35, Option fault

This warning is active if the output frequency has reached the high limit (set in 4-53 Warning Speed High) or low limit (set in 4-52 Warning Speed Low). In Process Control, Closed Loop (1-00 Configuration Mode) this warning is displayed.

## WARNING/ALARM 36, Mains failure

This warning/alarm is only active if the supply voltage to the frequency converter is lost and 14-10 Mains Failure is not set to [0] No Function. Check the fuses to the frequency converter and mains supply to the unit.

## ALARM 38, Internal fault

When an internal fault occurs, a code number defined in Table 8.4 is displayed.

## Troubleshooting

- Cycle the power.
- Check that the option is properly installed.
- Check for loose or missing wiring.

It may be necessary to contact Danfoss Service or the supplier. Note the code number for further troubleshooting directions.

| Number | Text |
| :---: | :--- |
| 0 | The serial port cannot be initialised. Contact your <br> Danfoss supplier or Danfoss Service. |
| $256-258$ | The power EEPROM data is defective or too old. |
| 512 | The control board EEPROM data is defective or too <br> old. |
| 513 | Communication time-out reading EEPROM data |
| 514 | Communication time-out reading EEPROM data |
| 515 | Application-oriented control cannot recognise the <br> EEPROM data. |
| 516 | Cannot write to the EEPROM because a write <br> command is in progress. |
| 517 | The write command is under time-out. |
| 519 | Failure in the EEPROM. |
| 783 | Parameter value outside of minimum/maximum <br> limits. |


| Number | Text |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1024-1279 | A CAN telegram could not be sent. |
| 1281 | Digital signal processor flash time-out. |
| 1282 | Power micro software version mismatch. |
| 1283 | Power EEPROM data version mismatch. |
| 1284 | Cannot read digital signal processor software version. |
| 1299 | The option software in slot $A$ is too old. |
| 1300 | The option software in slot B is too old. |
| 1301 | The option software in slot C0 is too old. |
| 1302 | The option software in slot C1 is too old. |
| 1315 | The option software in slot A is not supported (not allowed). |
| 1316 | The option software in slot $B$ is not supported (not allowed). |
| 1317 | The option software in slot C0 is not supported (not allowed). |
| 1318 | The option software in slot C1 is not supported (not allowed). |
| 1379 | Option A did not respond when calculating the platform version |
| 1380 | Option B did not respond when calculating the platform version. |
| 1381 | Option C0 did not respond when calculating the platform version. |
| 1382 | Option C1 did not respond when calculating the platform version. |
| 1536 | An exception in the application-oriented control is registered. The debug information is written on the LCP. |
| 1792 | DSP Watch Dog is active. Debugging of power part data, motor-oriented control data not transferred correctly. |
| 2049 | Power data restarted. |
| 2064-2072 | H081x: Option in slot $x$ has restarted. |
| 2080-2088 | H082x: Option in slot $x$ has issued a power-up wait. |
| 2096-2104 | H983x: Option in slot $x$ has issued a legal powerup wait. |
| 2304 | Could not read any data from the power EEPROM. |
| 2305 | Missing software version from the power unit. |
| 2314 | Missing power unit data from the power unit. |
| 2315 | Missing software version from the power unit. |
| 2316 | Missing lo_statepage from the power unit. |
| 2324 | The power card configuration is determined to be incorrect at power-up. |
| 2325 | A power card has stopped communicating while mains power is applied. |
| 2326 | The power card configuration is determined to be incorrect after the delay for power cards to register. |
| 2327 | Too many power card locations have been registered as present. |
| 2330 | The power size information between the power cards does not match. |


| Number | Text |
| :---: | :--- |
| 2561 | No communication from DSP to ATACD. |
| 2562 | No communication from ATACD to DSP (state <br> running). |
| 2816 | Stack overflow control board module |
| 2817 | Scheduler slow tasks |
| 2818 | Fast tasks |
| 2819 | Parameter thread |
| 2820 | LCP stack overflow |
| 2821 | Serial port overflow |
| 2822 | USB port overflow |
| 2836 | cfListMempool is too small. |
| $3072-5122$ | The parameter value is outside its limits. |
| 5123 | Option in slot A: Hardware incompatible with the <br> control board hardware. |
| 5124 | Option in slot B: Hardware incompatible with the <br> control board hardware. |
| 5125 | Option in slot C0: Hardware incompatible with the <br> control board hardware. |
| 5126 | Option in slot C1: Hardware incompatible with the <br> control board hardware. |
| $5376-6231$ | Out of memory |
|  |  |

Table 8.4 Internal Fault, Code Numbers

## ALARM 39, Heat sink sensor

No feedback from the heat sink temperature sensor.
The signal from the IGBT thermal sensor is not available on the power card. The problem could be on the power card, on the gate drive card, or the ribbon cable between the power card and gate drive card.

WARNING 40, Overload of digital output terminal 27 Check the load connected to terminal 27 or remove the short-circuit connection. Check 5-00 Digital I/O Mode and 5-01 Terminal 27 Mode.

WARNING 41, Overload of digital output terminal 29 Check the load connected to terminal 29 or remove the short-circuit connection. Check 5-00 Digital I/O Mode and 5-02 Terminal 29 Mode.

WARNING 42, Overload of digital output on X30/6 or overload of digital output on X30/7
For X30/6, check the load connected to X30/6 or remove the short-circuit connection. Check 5-32 Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101).

For X30/7, check the load connected to X30/7 or remove the short-circuit connection. Check 5-33 Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101).

## ALARM 46, Power card supply

The supply on the power card is out of range.
There are 3 power supplies generated by the switch mode power supply (SMPS) on the power card: $24 \mathrm{~V}, 5 \mathrm{~V}$, and $\pm 18$ V. When powered with 24 V DC with the MCB 107 option, only the 24 V and 5 V supplies are monitored. When
powered with 3 -phase mains voltage, all 3 supplies are monitored.

## WARNING 47, 24 V supply low

The 24 V DC is measured on the control card. This alarm arises when the detected voltage of terminal 12 is $<18 \mathrm{~V}$.

## Troubleshooting

- Check for a defective control card.


## WARNING 48, 1.8 V supply low

The 1.8 V DC supply used on the control card is outside of the allowable limits. The power supply is measured on the control card. Check for a defective control card. If an option card is present, check for overvoltage.

## WARNING 49, Speed limit

When the speed is outside of the specified range in parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] and parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM], the frequency converter shows a warning. When the speed is below the specified limit in 1-86 Trip Speed Low [RPM] (except when starting or stopping), the frequency converter trips.

## ALARM 50, AMA calibration failed

Contact the Danfoss supplier or Danfoss Service.
ALARM 51, AMA check Unom and Inom
The settings for motor voltage, motor current and motor power are wrong. Check the settings in parameters 1-20 to 1-25.

## ALARM 52, AMA low Inom

The motor current is too low. Check the settings.

## ALARM 53, AMA motor too big

The motor is too big for the AMA to operate.

## ALARM 54, AMA motor too small

The motor is too small for the AMA to operate.
ALARM 55, AMA parameter out of range
The parameter values of the motor are outside of the acceptable range. AMA cannot run.

ALARM 56, AMA interrupted by user
The user has interrupted the AMA.
ALARM 57, AMA internal fault
Continue to restart the AMA, until the AMA is carried out.

## NOTICE

Repeated runs may heat the motor to a level where the resistance $R_{s}$ and $R_{r}$ are increased. In most cases, however, this behaviour is not critical.

ALARM 58, AMA Internal fault
Contact your Danfoss supplier.
WARNING 59, Current limit
The current is higher than the value in 4-18 Current Limit. Ensure that motor data in parameters $1-20$ to $1-25$ are set correctly. Increase the current limit if necessary. Ensure that the system can operate safely at a higher limit.

## WARNING 60, External interlock

External interlock has been activated. To resume normal operation, apply 24 V DC to the terminal programmed for external interlock and reset the frequency converter (via serial communication, digital I/O, or by pressing [Reset]).

WARNING 62, Output frequency at maximum limit The output frequency is higher than the value set in 4-19 Max Output Frequency.

## ALARM 64, Voltage Limit

The load and speed combination demands a motor voltage higher than the actual DC-link voltage.

WARNING/ALARM 65, Control card over temperature
The cut-out temperature of the control card is $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.

## Troubleshooting

- Check that the ambient operating temperature is within the limits.
- Check for clogged filters.
- Check the fan operation.
- Check the control card.


## WARNING 66, Heat sink temperature low

The frequency converter is too cold to operate. This warning is based on the temperature sensor in the IGBT module.
Increase the ambient temperature of the unit. Also, a trickle amount of current can be supplied to the frequency converter whenever the motor is stopped by setting 2-00 DC Hold/Preheat Current at 5\% and 1-80 Function at Stop.

## Troubleshooting

The heat sink temperature measured as $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ could indicate that the temperature sensor is defective, causing the fan speed to increase to the maximum. This warning results if the sensor wire between the IGBT and the gate drive card is disconnected. Also, check the IGBT thermal sensor.

ALARM 67, Option module configuration has changed One or more options have either been added or removed since the last power-down. Check that the configuration change is intentional and reset the unit.

## ALARM 68, Safe Stop activated

STO has been activated. To resume normal operation, apply 24 V DC to terminal 37 , then send a reset signal (via bus, digital I/O, or by pressing [Reset].

## ALARM 69, Power card temperature

The temperature sensor on the power card is either too hot or too cold.

## Troubleshooting

- Check the operation of the door fans.
- Check that the filters for the door fans are not blocked.
- Check that the gland plate is properly installed on IP21/IP54 (NEMA 1/12) frequency converters.


## ALARM 70, Illegal FC configuration

The control card and power card are incompatible. To check compatibility, contact your Danfoss supplier with the type code of the unit from the nameplate and the part numbers of the cards.

## ALARM 72, Dangerous failure

STO with trip lock. Unexpected signal levels on safe stop and digital input from the VLT ${ }^{\circledR}$ PTC Thermistor Card MCB 112.

WARNING 73, Safe Stop auto restart
Safe stopped. With automatic restart enabled, the motor could start when the fault is cleared.

WARNING 76, Power unit setup
The required number of power units does not match the detected number of active power units.

## WARNING 77, Reduced power mode

The frequency converter is operating in reduced power mode (less than the allowed number of inverter sections). This warning is generated on power cycle when the frequency converter is set to run with fewer inverters and remains on.

## ALARM 79, Illegal power section configuration

The scaling card has an incorrect part number or is not installed. The MK102 connector on the power card could not be installed.

## ALARM 80, Drive initialised to default value

Parameter settings are initialised to default settings after a manual reset. To clear the alarm, reset the unit.

ALARM 91, Analog input 54 wrong settings
Switch S202 has to be set in position OFF (voltage input) when a KTY sensor is connected to analog input terminal 54.

## ALARM 92, No flow

A no-flow condition has been detected in the system. parameter 22-23 No-Flow Function is set for alarm.

## Troubleshooting

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.


## ALARM 93, Dry pump

A no-flow condition in the system with the frequency converter operating at high speed may indicate a dry pump. parameter 22-26 Dry Pump Function is set for alarm. Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.

## ALARM 94, End of curve

Feedback is lower than the set point. This may indicate leakage in the system. parameter 22-50 End of Curve Function is set for alarm.

## Troubleshooting

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.


## ALARM 95, Broken belt

Torque is below the torque level set for no load, indicating a broken belt. 22-60 Broken Belt Function is set for alarm.

## Troubleshooting

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.


## ALARM 96, Start delayed

Motor start has been delayed due to short-cycle protection. 22-76 Interval between Starts is enabled.

## Troubleshooting

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.


## WARNING 97, Stop delayed

Stopping the motor has been delayed due to short -cycle protection. 22-76 Interval between Starts is enabled.

## Troubleshooting

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.


## WARNING 98, Clock fault

Time is not set or the RTC clock has failed.

## Troubleshooting

- Reset the clock in 0-70 Date and Time.


## ALARM 220, Overload trip

Motor overload has tripped. Indicates excess motor load.

## Troubleshooting

- Check motor and driven load.
- To reset, press [Off Reset].
- Then, to restart the system press [Auto on] or [Hand on].


## ALARM 243, Brake IGBT

This alarm is only for enclosure size F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 27. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = Left most inverter module.
2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F3.
$2=$ Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.
2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.

3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.

3 = Third from the left intverter module in enclosure size F14.

4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure size
F14.
$5=$ Rectifier module.
$6=$ Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

## ALARM 244, Heat Sink temperature

This alarm is only for enclosure type F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 29. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = Left most inverter module.
2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure size F12 or F3.

2 = Right inverter module in enclosure size F10 or F11.
$2=$ Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.

3 = Rght inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.

3 = Tird from the left intverter module in enclosure size F14.

4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure sizes F14.

5 = Rectifier module.
6 = Right rectifier module in enclosure sizes F14.

## ALARM 245, Heat Sink sensor

This alarm is only for enclosure size F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 39. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = Left most inverter module.
2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.

2 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.
$2=$ Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.

3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.

3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.

4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure size F14.

5 = Rectifier module.
$6=$ Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

## ALARM 246, Power card supply

This alarm is only for enclosure size $F$ frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 46. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = Left most inverter module.
2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
$2=$ Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.

2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.

3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.

3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.

4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure size F14.
$5=$ Rectifier module.
6 = Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

## ALARM 247, Power card temperature

This alarm is only for enclosure size F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 69. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = Left most inverter module.
2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.

2 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.

2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.

3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.

3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.

4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure size F14.
$5=$ Rectifier module.
$6=$ Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

## ALARM 248, Illegal power section configuration

This alarm is only for enclosure size $F$ frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 79. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = Left most inverter module.
$2=$ Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.

2 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.

2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.

3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.

3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure sizes F14.

4 =Ffar right inverter module in enclosure sizes F14.
$5=$ Rectifier module.
6 = Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

WARNING 250, New spare part
A component in the frequency converter has been replaced.

## Troubleshooting

- Reset the frequency converter for normal operation.


## WARNING 251, New typecode

The power card or other components have been replaced and the typecode changed.

## Troubleshooting

- Reset to remove the warning and resume normal operation.
Index
A
Abbreviations ..... 5
Access to control terminal ..... 42
Airflow ..... 22
Alarm/warning code list. ..... 111
Alarms and Warnings. ..... 109
AMA ..... $48,57,114,117$
Analog input ..... 99, 113
Analog output. ..... 99
Analog signal. ..... 113
Automatic motor adaptation (AMA) ..... 48
B
Back cooling. ..... 22
Braje Brake control ..... 114
Brake
cable. ..... 37
control, mechanical ..... 49
resistor. ..... 113
resistor temperature switch. ..... 41
Braking ..... 115
Branch circuit protection. ..... 38
C
Cable length and cross-section ..... 30, 98
Cable, motor. ..... 36
Cabling. ..... 28
Changing a group of numeric data values ..... 56
Changing a text value. ..... 56
Changing data. ..... 56
Changing of data value. ..... 57
Closed loop ..... 116
Coasting ..... 54
Communication option ..... 116
Control cable ..... 45, 47
Control card Control card ..... 113
Control card performance. ..... 101
Control card, 10 V DC output ..... 101
Control card, 24 V DC output ..... 100
Control card, RS-485 serial communication ..... 100
Control card, USB serial communication ..... 101
Control characteristic. ..... 101
Control terminal. ..... 42
Conventions .....  6
Cooling ..... 22
Current rating ..... 113
D
DC link ..... 113
Default setting. ..... 57,93
Delivery. ..... 9
Digital input. ..... 98, 114
Digital output ..... 100
Display Line 1.3 Small, 0-22. ..... 69
Display Line 3 Large, 0-24 ..... 69
Drive Closed Loop, 20-** ..... 82
Dry pump function. ..... 85
Duct cooling ..... 22
E
ELCB relay ..... 35
Electrical installation ..... 42, 45
Enclosure size F panel options. ..... 26
External fan supply. ..... 38
External temperature monitoring ..... 27
F
Feedback. ..... 117, 118
Fieldbus connection. ..... 41
Fuse. ..... 38, 116
Fuse tables ..... 38
Fuse-protected terminals, 30 Amp. ..... 27
Fusing. ..... 28
G
General considerations ..... 15
General Settings, 1-0*. ..... 70
Gland/conduit entry, IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12) ..... 23
GLCP. ..... 57
Graphical display ..... 51
Grounding ..... 35
H
Heat sink ..... 117
High voltage ..... 7
How to connect a PC to the frequency converter. ..... 58
I
Indexed parameter ..... 57
Indicator lights (LEDs). ..... 52
Initialisation ..... 57
Input polarity of control terminals ..... 47
Input terminal. ..... 113
Inspection on receipt. ..... 9
Installation
Installation, mechanical. ..... 15
Installation, electrical. ..... 45
Insulation resistance monitor (IRM) ..... 26
Intermediate circuit. ..... 113
IT mains ..... 35
L
Language package. ..... 65
LCP ..... 54, 57
LCP 102. ..... 51
Leakage current. ..... 7
LEDs ..... 51
Local reference. ..... 72
Low power detection. ..... 84
Low speed detection. ..... 84
M
Main menu ..... 61
Main Menu mode ..... 53, 64
Main reactance ..... 70
Mains connection. ..... 37
Mains supply (L1-1, L2-1, L3-1, L1-2, L2-2, L3-2), ..... 98
Manual motor starter. ..... 26
Mechanical brake control. ..... 49
Mechanical dimensions ..... 14
Mechanical Dimensions ..... 11
Mechanical installation. ..... 15
Motor
cable. ..... 36
current. ..... 117
data. ..... 114, 117
nameplate. ..... 48
power ..... 117
thermal protection. ..... 50
Motor output. ..... 98
Motor protection ..... 101
N
NAMUR. ..... 26
NLCP ..... 54


## 0

Operation/display, 0-**. ..... 65
Output current. ..... 113
Output performance (U, V, W) ..... 98
Overcurrent protection ..... 38
P
Parallel connection of motors ..... 49
Parameter Options ..... 93
Parameter selection ..... 64
Parameter set-up ..... 60
PC software tools ..... 59
Phase loss ..... 113
Planning the installation site ..... 9
Potentiometer reference. ..... 44
Power connection. ..... 28
Profibus DP-V1 ..... 59
Programming ..... 113
Protection and features. ..... 101
Pulse input ..... 99
Pulse start/stop ..... 43
Q
Q1 My Personal Menu. ..... 61
Q2 Quick Setup ..... 61
Q3 Function Set-ups. ..... 62
Q5 Changes Made. ..... 64
Q6 Loggings ..... 64
Qualified personnel ..... 7
Quick menu ..... 61
Quick Menu ..... 53, 61
Quick Menu mode. ..... 53
Quick Transfer of Parameter Settings when Using GLCP ..... 57
R
RCD (Residual current device). ..... 26
Receiving the frequency converter. ..... 9
Reference Limits, 3-0*. ..... 71
Relay output ..... 100
Reset. ..... 54, 113, 114, 118
RFI switch. ..... 35
RS-485 bus connection ..... 58
SSafe Torque Off8
Screened cable. ..... 36
Screened/armoured ..... 47
Screening of cables ..... 30
Serial communication ..... 101
Short circuit ..... 114
Short-circuit protection ..... 38
Sine-wave filter ..... 30
Space. ..... 15
Space heaters and thermostat. ..... 26
Speed up/down. ..... 43
Start/stop ..... 43
Stator leakage reactance. ..... 70
Status. ..... 53
Status messages. ..... 51
STO. .....  8
Supply voltage ..... 116
Surrounding ..... 101
Switches S201, S202 and S801 ..... 47
Switching frequency ..... 30
T
Terminal 54 ..... 118
Terminals, fuse-protected, 30 ampere ..... 27
Thermal motor protection ..... 114
Thermal protection ..... 5
Thermistor. ..... 114
Tightening torque ..... 35
Timed Actions, 23-0* ..... 89
Torque ..... 35, 114
Torque characteristic ..... 98
U
Unintended motor rotation. ..... 8
Unintended start ..... 7
Unpacking ..... 9
VVoltage imbalance.113
Voltage level. ..... 99
Voltage reference via a potentiometer. ..... 44
VVC+ .....  6
W
Water Application Functions. ..... 91
Windmilling .....  8
Wire access. ..... 15

www.danfoss.com/drives

Danfoss can accept no responsibility for possible errors in catalogues, brochures and other printed material. Danfoss reserves the right to alter its products without notice. This also applies to products already on order provided that such alterations can be made without subsequential changes being necessary in specifications already agreed. All trademarks in this material are property of the respective companies. Danfoss and the Danfoss logotype are trademarks of Danfoss A/S. All rights reserved.

Danfoss A/S
Ulsnaes 1
DK-6300 Graasten
www.danfoss.com/drives


[^0]:    Illustration 4.5 Rectifier Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F10 and F12

[^1]:    Table 4.7 Mains Fuses, 380-500 V

[^2]:    Illustration 5.16 Display Example

[^3]:    Illustration 6.11 Preset Reference

[^4]:    Illustration 6.17

[^5]:    Illustration 6.18 Live Zero Conditions

[^6]:    1) IEC 60947 parts 4 and 5

    The relay contacts are galvanically isolated from the rest of the circuit by reinforced isolation (PELV).
    2) Overvoltage Category II
    3) UL applications 300 V AC 2 A

